REVISION TEST PAPERS

INTERMEDIATE (IPC) COURSE

(UNDER OLD SCHEME)

GROUP – II

NOVEMBER, 2019

BOARD OF STUDIES
THE INSTITUTE OF CHARTERED ACCOUNTANTS OF INDIA
(Set up by an Act of Parliament)
New Delhi

© The Institute of Chartered Accountants of India
## Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page Nos.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Objective &amp; Approach</strong></td>
<td>i – vii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Objective of Revision Test Paper</td>
<td>i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Planning &amp; Preparing for Examination</td>
<td>ii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subject-wise Guidance – An Overview</td>
<td>iv</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Paper-wise RTPs</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paper 5: Advanced Accounting</td>
<td>1 – 60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part – I: Announcements Stating Applicability &amp; Non-Applicability</td>
<td>1 – 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part – II: Questions and Answers</td>
<td>18 – 60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paper 6: Auditing and Assurance</td>
<td>61 – 152</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part – I: Academic Update</td>
<td>61 – 120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part – II: Questions and Answers</td>
<td>120 – 152</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paper 7: Information Technology and Strategic Management</td>
<td>153 – 176</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section-A: Information Technology Questions and Answers</td>
<td>153 – 164</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section-B: Strategic Management Questions and Answers</td>
<td>165 – 176</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Applicability of Standards/Guidance Notes/Legislative Amendments etc. for November, 2019 – Intermediate (IPC) Examination</strong></td>
<td>177 – 180</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
REVISION TEST PAPER, NOVEMBER 2019 – OBJECTIVE & APPROACH

(Students are advised to go through the following paragraphs carefully to derive maximum benefit out of this RTP)

I Objective of Revision Test Paper

Revision Test Papers are one among the many educational inputs provided by the Board of Studies (BOS) to its students. Popularly referred to as RTP by the students, it is one of the very old publications of the BOS whose significance and relevance from the examination perspective has stood the test of time.

RTPs provide glimpses of not only the desirable ways in which examination questions are to be answered but also of the professional quality and standard of the answers expected of students in the examination. Further, aspirants can assess their level of preparation for the examination by answering various questions given in the RTP and can also update themselves with the latest developments in the various subjects relevant from the examination point of view.

The primary objectives of the RTP are:

• To help students get an insight of their preparedness for the forthcoming examination;
• To provide an opportunity for a student to find all the latest developments relevant for the forthcoming examination at one place;
• To supplement earlier studies;
• To enhance the confidence level of the students adequately; and
• To leverage the preparation of the students by giving guidance on how to approach the examinations.

RTPs contain the following:

(i) Planning and preparing for examination
(ii) Subject-wise guidance – An overview
(iii) Updates applicable for a particular exam in the relevant subjects
(iv) Topic-wise questions and detailed answers thereof in respect of each paper
(v) Relevant publications/announcement applicable for the particular examination

Students must bear in mind that the RTP contains a variety of questions based on different sections of the syllabi and thus a comprehensive study of the entire syllabus is a pre-requisite before answering the questions of the RTP. In other words, in order to derive maximum benefit out of the RTPs, it is advised that before proceeding to solve the
questions given in the RTP, students ought to have thoroughly read the Study Materials, solved the questions given in the Practice Manual and gone through the Suggested Answers of the earlier examinations. It is important to remember that there can be large number of other complex questions which are not covered in the RTP. In fact, questions contained herein are only illustrative in nature.

The topics on which the questions are set herein have been carefully selected and meticulous attention has been paid in framing different types of questions. Detailed answers are provided to enable the students to do a self-assessment and have a focused approach for effective preparation.

Students are welcome to send their suggestions for fine tuning the RTP to the Director, Board of Studies, The Institute of Chartered Accountants of India, A-29, Sector-62, Noida 201 309 (Uttar Pradesh). RTP is also available on the Institute’s website www.icai.org under the BOS knowledge portal in students section for downloading.

II. Planning and preparing for examination

Ideally, when you receive the RTP, you should have completed the entire syllabus of all the subjects at least once. RTP is an effective tool to revise and refresh your concepts and knowledge gained through the first round of study of the whole course. When the RTP reaches your hand, your study plan should have been completed as under:

❖ Study Materials

You must have finished reading the relevant Study Materials of all the subjects. Make sure you go through the Study Material as they cover the syllabus comprehensively.

❖ Other Educational Inputs

In case of papers on Taxation, you must have carefully perused the Supplementary Study paper containing the latest amendments made through the relevant Finance Act and notifications and circulars issued from time to time which are applicable for the forthcoming examinations.

❖ Practice Manuals

Practice Manuals are an excellent medium of understanding the practical aspects of the various provisions learnt through the Study Materials. Solving the Practice Manual at least once before proceeding to the RTP will ensure that you have a grasp of the application and computational aspect of the syllabus as well.

❖ Suggested Answers

Giving an honest attempt to solve the previous attempts suggested answers on your own, will give you a flavour of the pattern of question paper and type of questions which are being asked in the examination.
After completing the above process, you should go through the Updates provided in the RTP and then proceed to solve the questions given in the RTP on your own. RTPs are provided to you to check your preparation standards and hence it must be solved on your own in a time-bound manner.

The stratagem and the fine points requiring careful consideration in respect of preparation for the CA examinations are explained in comprehensive details in BOS’ publication “How to face CA Examinations? A Matrix of Winning Strategies”. The publication may be referred to when you start preparing for a subject.

Examination tips

How well a student fares in the examination depends upon the level and depth of his preparation. However, there are certain important points which can help a student better his performance in the examination. These useful tips are given below:

• Reach the examination hall well in time.
• As soon as you get the question paper, read it carefully and thoroughly. You are given separate 15 minutes for reading the question paper.
• Plan your time so that appropriate time is awarded for each question. Keep sometime for checking the paper as well.
• First impression is the last impression. The question which you can answer in the best manner should be attempted first.
• Always attempt to do all questions. Therefore, it is important that you must finish each question within allocated time.
• Read the question carefully more than once before starting the answer to understand very clearly as to what is required.
• Answer all parts of a question one after the other; do not answer different parts of the same question at different places.
• Write in a neat and legible hand-writing.
• Always be concise and write to the point and do not try to fill pages unnecessarily.
• There must be logical expression of the answer.
• In case a question is not clear, you may state your assumptions and then answer the question.
• Check your answers carefully and underline important points before leaving the examination hall.
III. Subject-wise Guidance – An Overview

PAPER 5: ADVANCED ACCOUNTING

The Revisionary Test Paper (RTP) of Advanced Accounting is divided into two parts viz Part I - Relevant Announcements, Amendments and Notifications for November, 2019 examination and Part II – Questions and Answers.

It may be noted that the July, 2015* edition of the Study Material and April, 2016 edition of Practice Manual is relevant for November, 2019 Examination.

Part I of the Revisionary Test Paper consists of the ‘Relevant Amendments and Notifications - applicable and not applicable’ for November, 2019 examination. The purpose of this information in the RTP is to apprise the students with the latest developments applicable for November, 2019 examination. The brief summary of the same has been given as under:

A. Applicable for November, 2019 examination:
   I. Amendments in Schedule III (Division I) to the Companies Act, 2013
   II. Amendment in AS 11 “The Effects of Changes in Foreign Exchange Rates”
   III. Amendments made by MCA in the Companies (Accounting Standards) Rules, 2006
   IV. Redemption of Debentures
   V. Provisions of the Companies Act, 2013 related with Liquidation of Companies
   VI. Maintenance of Statutory Liquidity Ratio (SLR) and Cash Reserve Ratio (CRR)
   VII. Relevant Provisions of the Insurance Act [updated as per the Insurance (Amendment) Act, 2015]

B. Not applicable for November, 2019 examination:
   Ind ASs issued by the Ministry of Corporate Affairs.

Part II of the Revisionary Test Paper consists of twenty questions together with their answers. First fifteen questions are based on different topics discussed in the study material. Last 4 questions of this RTP are based on Accounting Standards. For easy reference the topic / accounting standard number on which the question is based has been quoted at the top of each question. The details of topics, on which questions in the RTP are based, are as under:

* Chapters 2, 4, 5 and 6 of the Intermediate Paper 5 Advanced Accounting Study Material have been revised in line with the Companies (Accounting Standards) Amendment Rules, Banking and IRDA Regulations. These revised chapters have been uploaded on the BoS Knowledge Portal of the Institute’s website.
## INTERMEDIATE (IPC) EXAMINATION: NOVEMBER 2019

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question No.</th>
<th>Topic</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Dissolution of partnership firm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Conversion of Partnership firms into a company</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Sale of Partnership Firm to a Company</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>LLP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Employee Stock Option Plans</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Buy Back of Securities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Redemption of Debentures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Underwriting of Shares</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Amalgamation of companies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Internal Reconstruction of a Company</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Liquidation of a Company</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Financial Statements of Insurance Companies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>Financial Statements of Banking Companies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>Departmental Accounts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>Branch Accounting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>Framework for preparation and presentation of Financial Statements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17 to 20</td>
<td>Accounting Standards</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Answers to the questions have been given in detail along with the working notes for easy understanding and comprehending the steps in solving the problems. The answers to the questions have been presented in the manner which is expected from the students in the examination. The students are expected to solve the questions under examination conditions and then compare their solutions with the solutions given in the Revisionary Test Paper and further strategize their preparation for scoring more marks in the examination.

**PAPER – 6: AUDITING AND ASSURANCE**

RTP is a tool to refresh your knowledge which you have acquired while doing your conceptual study from Study Material, Practice Manual and other modes of knowledge like student journal, bare acts etc.

The Revisionary Test Paper (RTP) of Auditing and Assurance for November, 2019 carries twenty descriptive questions along with 10 MCQs and their answers. These questions have been taken from the entire syllabus which is divided into nine chapters along with engagement and quality control standards, etc. discussed in the study material.
The various Chapters/topics as mentioned above are Standards on Auditing, Nature of Auditing, Basic Concepts in Auditing, Preparation for an Audit, Internal Control, Vouching, Verification of Assets and Liabilities, Company Audit and Special Audits. The chapter’s name is also clearly indicated before each question. The questions in the RTP have been arranged in the same sequence as prescribed in the study material to facilitate easy revision by the students. An attempt has been made to cover the syllabus comprehensively by giving questions from each and every topic.

This RTP of Auditing and Assurance has been divided into two parts viz Part I – Legislative Amendments / Notifications / Circulars / Rules / Guidelines issued by Regulating Authority relevant for November, 2019 examination and Part II – Questions and Answers. The relevant notified sections of the Companies Act, 2013 and other legislative amendments including relevant Notifications / Circulars / Rules / Guidelines issued by Regulating Authorities up to 30th April, 2019 are applicable for November, 2019 Examination. The questions have been answered in this RTP keeping in view latest amendments as per above mentioned dates.

**PAPER – 7: INFORMATION TECHNOLOGY AND STRATEGIC MANAGEMENT**

**Section – A: Information Technology**

The Revision Test Paper of November, 2019 on Information Technology describes the comprehensive view of the syllabus with special emphasis on CA examination at Intermediate (IPC) level. The topic-wise questions and answers are given so that student could test his/her preparation level for the examination. The RTP is based on the existing study material that is already provided to the student. It also includes latest development in the field of Information Technology that is required to know by the students. Full answer to each question is given so that students would be benefited without searching the answers from various sources.

Total 15 questions have been given out of which first 5 questions numbered 1 to 5 are Multiple Choice Questions (MCQ) based on each chapter. Each MCQ has four options out of which only one option is correct. Remaining 10 descriptive questions numbered 1 to 10 with 2 questions from each chapter are provided chapter-wise. These questions have been selected from various topics keeping in view the complete and uniform coverage of the syllabus from all the chapters. The questions provide an insight to the students on their understanding of the fundamental concepts of Business Process Management & IT; Information Systems and IT Fundamentals; Telecommunication and Networks; Business Information Systems and Business Process Automation through Application software.
Section – B: Strategic Management

The Revision Test Paper in the subject of Strategic Management for the November, 2019 examination contains 15 questions. Broadly, the questions included are of two categories – multiple choice questions and other descriptive questions. Each question is further subdivided into different parts to extensively cover different chapters of the syllabus.

In the first question, multiple choice questions with four alternatives are included and the student has to opt the correct option. Subsequently, fourteen descriptive questions have been included that covers all the seven chapters of the syllabus. Chapter names have been mentioned before questions.

The students should take up this Revision Test Paper as a tool to check their preparedness in the subject. To properly self-assess the preparation in the subject, students must attempt the questions on their own. Mere reading will not be helpful. Compare your answers with the suggested answers and hints given to assess the present status of understanding and identify areas for improvement.

Work hard and perform well in the examination.
PART – I: ANNOUNCEMENTS STATING APPLICABILITY & NON-APPLICABILITY
FOR NOVEMBER, 2019 EXAMINATION

A. Applicable for November, 2019 Examination

I. Amendments in Schedule III (Division I) to the Companies Act, 2013

In exercise of the powers conferred by sub-section (1) of section 467 of the Companies Act, 2013, the Central Government made the following amendments in Division I of the Schedule III with effect from the date of publication of this notification in the Official Gazette:

(A) under the heading “II Assets”, under sub-heading “Non-current assets”, for the words “Fixed assets”, the words “Property, Plant and Equipment” shall be substituted;

(B) in the “Notes”, under the heading “General Instructions for preparation of Balance Sheet”, in paragraph 6 -

(I) under the heading “B. Reserves and Surplus”, in item (i), in sub- item (c), the word “Reserve” shall be omitted;

(II) in clause W., for the words “fixed assets”, the words “Property, Plant and Equipment” shall be substituted.

II. Amendment in AS 11 “The Effects of Changes in Foreign Exchange Rates”

In exercise of the powers conferred by clause (a) of sub-section (1) of section 642 of the Companies Act, 1956, the Central Government, in consultation with National Advisory Committee on Accounting Standards, hereby made the amendment in the Companies (Accounting Standards) Rules, 2006, in the "ANNEXURE", under the heading "ACCOUNTING STANDARDS" under "AS 11 on The Effects of Changes in Foreign Exchange Rates", for the paragraph 32, the following paragraph shall be substituted, namely:-

"32. An enterprise may dispose of its interest in a non-integral foreign operation through sale, liquidation, repayment of share capital or abandonment of all, or part of, that operation. The payment of a dividend forms part of a disposal only when it constitutes a return of the investment. Remittance from a non-integral foreign operation by way of repatriation of accumulated profits does not form part of a disposal unless it constitutes return of the investment. In the case of a partial disposal, only the proportionate share of the related accumulated exchange differences is included in the gain or loss. A writedown of the carrying amount of a non-integral foreign operation does not constitute a partial disposal. Accordingly, no part of the deferred foreign exchange gain or loss is recognised at the time of a write-down".
III. Amendments made by MCA in the Companies (Accounting Standards) Rules, 2006

Amendments made by MCA on 30.3.2016 in the Companies (Accounting Standards) Rules, 2006 have been made applicable for November, 2019 examination.

MCA has issued Companies (Accounting Standards) Amendment Rules, 2016 to amend Companies (Accounting Standards) Rules, 2006 by incorporating the references of the Companies Act, 2013, wherever applicable. Also, the Accounting Standard (AS) 2, AS 4, AS 10, AS 13, AS 14, AS 21 and AS 29 as specified in these Rules will substitute the corresponding Accounting Standards with the same number as specified in Companies (Accounting Standards) Rules, 2006.

Following table summarizes the changes made by the Companies (Accounting Standards) Amendment Rules, 2016 vis a vis the Companies (Accounting Standards) Rules, 2006 in the accounting standards relevant for Paper 5:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name of the standard</th>
<th>Para no.</th>
<th>As per the Companies (Accounting Standards) Rules, 2006</th>
<th>As per the Companies (Accounting Standards) Amendment Rules, 2016</th>
<th>Implication</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AS 4</td>
<td>Footnote to AS 4</td>
<td>Pursuant to AS 29, Provisions, Contingent Liabilities and Contingent Assets, becoming mandatory in respect of accounting periods commencing on or after 1-4-2004, all paragraphs of this Standard that deal with contingencies (viz. paragraphs 1(a), 2, 3.1, 4 (4.1 to 4.4), 5 (5.1 to 5.6), 6, 7 (7.1 to 7.3), 9.1 (relevant portion), 9.2, 10, 11, 12 and 16) stand withdrawn except to the extent they deal with impairment of assets not covered by other Accounting Standards prescribed by the Central Government. For example, the impairment of financial assets such as impairment of receivables (commonly known as provision for bad and doubtful debts) is governed by this Standard.</td>
<td>All paragraphs of this Standard that deal with contingencies are applicable only to the extent not covered by other Accounting Standards</td>
<td>Footnote has been modified.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.5</td>
<td>There are events which, although they take place after the balance sheet date, are sometimes reflected in the financial statements because of statutory requirements or because of their special nature. Such items include the amount of dividend proposed or declared by the enterprise after the balance sheet date in respect of the period covered by the financial statements.</td>
<td>There are events which, although take place after the balance sheet date, are sometimes reflected in the financial statements because of statutory requirements or because of their special nature. For example, if dividends are declared after the balance sheet date but before the financial statements are approved for issue, the dividends are not recognized as a liability at the balance sheet date because no obligation exists at that time unless a statute requires otherwise. Such dividends are disclosed in the notes.</td>
<td>No liability for proposed dividends must be created now. Such proposed dividends are to be disclosed in the notes.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>Dividends stated to be in respect of the period covered by the financial statements, which are proposed or declared by the enterprise after the balance sheet date but before approval of the financial statements, should be adjusted.</td>
<td>If an enterprise declares dividends to shareholders after the balance sheet date, the enterprise should not recognize those dividends as a liability at the balance sheet date unless a statute requires otherwise. Such dividends should be disclosed in notes.</td>
<td>No liability for proposed dividends should be created now. Such proposed dividends are to be disclosed in the notes.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 14 3(a)</td>
<td>Amalgamation means an amalgamation pursuant to the provisions of the Companies Act, 1956 or any other statute which may be applicable to companies.</td>
<td>Amalgamation means an amalgamation pursuant to the provisions of the Companies Act, 2013 or any other statute which may be applicable to companies and includes ‘merger’.</td>
<td>Definition of Amalgamation has been made broader by specifically including ‘merger’.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18 and 39</td>
<td>In such cases the statutory reserves are recorded in the financial statements of the transferee company by a corresponding debit to a suitable account head (e.g., ‘Amalgamation Adjustment Account’) which is disclosed as a part of ‘miscellaneous expenditure’ or other.</td>
<td>In such cases the statutory reserves are recorded in the financial statements of the transferee company by a corresponding debit to a suitable account head (e.g., ‘Amalgamation Adjustment Reserve’) which is presented as a.</td>
<td>Corresponding debit on account of statutory reserve in case of amalgamation in the nature of purchase is termed as ‘Amalgamation Adjustment Reserve’ and is now to be</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
similar category in the balance sheet. When the identity of the statutory reserves is no longer required to be maintained, both the reserves and the aforesaid account are reversed. When the identity of the statutory reserves is no longer required to be maintained, both the reserves and the aforesaid account are reversed. presented as a separate line item since there is not sub-heading like 'miscellaneous expenditure' in Schedule III to the Companies Act, 2013

| AS 29 | 35 (An extract) | The amount of a provision should not be discounted to its present value. The amount of a provision should not be discounted to its present value except in case of decommissioning, restoration and similar liabilities that are recognized as cost of Property, Plant and Equipment. The discount rate (or rates) should be a pre-tax rate (or rates) that reflect(s) current market assessments of the time value of money and the risks specific to the liability. The discount rate(s) should not reflect risks for which future cash flow estimates have been adjusted. Periodic unwinding of Now discounting of provision for decommissioning, restoration and similar liabilities should be done as per the pre-tax discount rate as mentioned therein. |
discou
nt should be
recognized in the
statement of profit
and loss.

| 73 | Transitional Provisions | Discounting of above existing provisions and similar liabilities should be prospectively, with the corresponding effect to the related item of property, plant and equipment. |

Transitional Provisions
All the existing provisions for decommissioning, restoration and similar liabilities (see paragraph 35) should be discounted prospectively, with the corresponding effect to the related item of property, plant and equipment.

IV. Redemption of Debentures

Unit 3 of Chapter 4 on Redemption of Debentures of Intermediate Paper 5 Advanced Accounting Study Material has been revised. The revised unit has been uploaded on the BoS Knowledge Portal of the Institute’s website. It is advised to ignore the unit given in July, 2015 Edition (or prior Edition) of the Study Material and to refer the updated unit uploaded on the BoS Knowledge Portal of the Institute’s website at the below mentioned link:

https://resource.cdn.icai.org/54231bos43539cp4-u3.pdf

V. Provisions of the Companies Act, 2013 related with Liquidation of Companies

As per Section 2 (94A) of the Companies Act, 2013, winding up means winding up under this Act. As per section 270, the provision of Part I should apply to the winding up of a company by the Tribunal under this Act.

Circumstances in which Company may be wound up by Tribunal [Section 271]

(a) The company has resolved that the company be wound up by the Tribunal.

(b) The company has acted against the interests of the sovereignty and integrity of India, the security of the State, friendly relations with foreign States, public order, decency or morality

(c) The Registrar or any other person authorized by the Central Government by notification under this Act can make an application to tribunal. The Tribunal is of the opinion that the
affairs of the company have been conducted in a fraudulent manner or the company was formed for fraudulent and unlawful purpose or the persons concerned in the formation or management of its affairs have been guilty of fraud, misfeasance or misconduct in connection therewith and that it is proper that the company be wound up.

(d) The company has made a default in filing with the Registrar its financial statements or annual returns for immediately preceding 5 consecutive financial years.

(e) The Tribunal is of the opinion that it is just and equitable that the company should be wound up.

A company may file petition for winding up under section 272 of the Companies Act, 2013. Petition for winding up to Tribunal cab neb made by the company, any contributory or contributories, the registrar, any person authorized by Central Govt. in that behalf or li case affairs of the company have been conducted in a Fraudulent manner, by the Central Government or a State Government.

Petition by Contributory
A contributory should be entitled to present a petition for the winding up of a company. Shares in respect of which he is a contributory were either originally allotted to him or have been held by him for at least 6 months during the 18 months immediately before the commencement of the winding up and registered in his name or have transferred to him through the death of a former holder.

Petition by Registrar
The Registrar should be entitled to present a petition for winding up under section 271, except on the grounds specified in section 271 (a) or (e). The Registrar should obtain the previous sanction of the Central Government to the presentation of a petition. The Central Government should not accord its sanction unless the company has been given a reasonable opportunity of making representations.

Petition by Company
A petition presented by the company for winding up before the Tribunal should be admitted only if accompanied by a statement of affairs in such form and in such manner as may be prescribed.

A copy of the petition made under this section should also be filed with the Registrar and the Registrar should, without prejudice to any other provisions, submit his views to the Tribunal within 60 days of receipt of such petition.

A company may be wound up voluntarily [Section 304].

---

1 Applicable until 31 March 2017; with effect from 1 April 2017, Section 59 of the Insolvency and Bankruptcy Code, 2016 is applicable.
(a) if the company in general meeting passes a resolution requiring the company to be wound up voluntarily as a result of the expiry of the period for its duration, if any, fixed by its articles or on the occurrence of any event in respect of which the articles provide that the company should be dissolved; or

(b) if the company passes a special resolution that the company be wound up.

**Liquidators' Statement of Account**

In case of Compulsory wound-up, the Company Liquidator should keep proper books in such manner, as may be prescribed, in which he should cause entries or minutes to be made of proceedings at meetings and of such other matters as may be prescribed.

Any creditor or contributory may, subject to the control of the Tribunal, inspect any such books, personally or through his agent.

While preparing the liquidator's statement of account, receipts are shown in the following order:

(a) Amount realized from assets are included in the prescribed order.

(b) In case of assets specifically pledged in favour of creditors, only the surplus from it, if any, is entered as ‘surplus from securities’.

(c) In case of partly paid up shares, the equity shareholders should be called up to pay necessary amount (not exceeding the amount of uncalled capital) if creditors' claims/claims of preference shareholders can't be satisfied with the available amount. Preference shareholders would be called upon to contribute (not exceeding the amount as yet uncalled on the shares) for paying of creditors.

(d) Amounts received from calls to contributories made at the time of winding up are shown on the Receipts side.

(e) Receipts per Trading Account are also included on the Receipts side.

(f) Payments made to redeem securities and cost of execution and payments per Trading Account are deducted from total receipts.

Payments are made and shown in the following order:

(a) Legal charges;

(b) Liquidator’s expenses;

(c) Debenture holders (including interest up to the date of winding up if the company is insolvent and to the date of payment if it is solvent);

(d) Creditors:

   (i) Preferential (in actual practice, preferential creditors are paid before debenture holders having a floating charge);

   (ii) Unsecured creditors;
(e) Preferential shareholders (Arrears of dividends on cumulative preference shares should be paid up to the date of commencement of winding up); and

(f) Equity shareholders.

**Commencement of Winding Up by Tribunal [Section 357]**

Where, before the presentation of a petition for the winding up of a company by the Tribunal, a resolution has been passed by the company for voluntary winding up, the winding up of the company should be deemed to have commenced at the time of the passing of the resolution, and unless the Tribunal, on proof of fraud or mistake, thinks fit to direct otherwise, all proceedings taken in the voluntary winding up should be deemed to have been validly taken.

In any other case, the winding up of a company by the Tribunal should be deemed to commence at the time of the presentation of the petition for the winding up.

**Exclusion of Certain Time in Computing Period of Limitation [Section 358]**

Notwithstanding anything in the Limitation Act, 1963, or in any other law for the time being in force, in computing the period of limitation specified for any suit or application in the name and on behalf of a company which is being wound up by the Tribunal, the period from the date of commencement of the winding up of the company to a period of one year immediately following the date of the winding up order should be excluded.

**Statement of Affairs**

In case of winding up by Tribunal, Section 272(5) of the Companies Act, 2013 provides that a petition presented by the company for winding up before the Tribunal shall be admitted only if accompanied by a statement of affairs in such form and in such manner as may be prescribed.

In accordance with Section 274(1), where a petition for winding up is filed before the Tribunal by any person other than the company, the Tribunal shall, if satisfied that a prima facie case for winding up of the company is made out, by an order direct the company to file its objections along with a statement of its affairs within thirty days of the order in such form and in such manner as may be prescribed. The Tribunal may allow a further period of thirty days in a situation of contingency or special circumstances.

The broad lines on which the Statement of Affairs is prepared are the following —

1. Include assets on which there is no fixed charge at the value they are expected to realize. Students should note to include calls in arrear but not uncalled capital.

2. Include assets on which there is a fixed charge. The amount expected to be realized would be compared with the amount due to the creditor concerned. Any surplus is to be extended to the other column. A deficit (the amount owed to the creditor exceeding the amount realizable from the asset) is to be added to unsecured creditors.

3. The total of assets in point (1) and any surplus from assets mentioned in point (2) is available for all the creditors (except secured creditors already covered by specifically mortgaged assets).
(4) From the total assets available, the following should be deducted one by one:-

(i) Preferential creditors,
(ii) Debentures having a floating charge, and
(iii) Unsecured creditors.

If a minus balance emerges, there would be deficiency as regards creditors, otherwise there would be a surplus.

(5) The amount of total paid-up capital (giving details of each class of shares) should be added and the figure emerging will be deficiency (or surplus) as regards members.

Note: Statement of affairs should accompany eight lists:
List A Full particulars of every description of property not specifically pledged and included in any other list are to be set forth in this list.
List B Assets specifically pledged and creditors fully or partly secured.
List C Preferential creditors for rates, taxes, salaries, wages and otherwise.
List D List of debenture holders secured by a floating charge.
List E Unsecured creditors.
List F List of preference shareholders.
List G List of equity shareholders.
List H Deficiency or surplus account.

Deficiency Account
The official liquidator will specify a date for period (minimum three years) beginning with the date on which information is supplied for preparation of an account to explain the deficiency or surplus. On that date either assets would exceed capital plus liabilities, that is, there would be a reserve or there would be a deficit or debit balance in the Profit and Loss Account. The Deficiency account is divided into two parts:

1. The first part starts with the deficit (on the given date) and contains every item that increases deficiency (or reduces surplus such as losses, dividends etc.).
2. The second part starts with the surplus on the given date and includes all profits.

If the total of the first exceeds that of the second, there would be a deficiency to the extent of the difference, and if the total of the second part exceeds that of the first, there would be a surplus.

Overriding Preferential Payments [Section 326]: In the winding up of a company under this Act, the following debts should be paid in priority to all other debts:

a. workmen’s dues; and
b. where a secured creditor has realized a secured asset, so much of the debts due to such secured creditor as could not be realized by him or the amount of the workmen’s portion in his security (if payable under the law), whichever is less, pari-passu with the workmen’s dues:

**Explanation:** For the purposes of this section, and section 327 -

a) **Workmen,** in relation to a company, means the employees of the company, being workmen within the meaning of Section 2 (s) of the Industrial Disputes Act, 1947;

b) **Workmen’s dues,** in relation to a company, means the aggregate of the following sums due from the company to its workmen, namely:

   (i) All wages or salary including wages payable;

   (ii) all accrued holiday remuneration becoming payable to any workman

   (iii) unless the company is being wound up voluntarily merely for the purposes of reconstruction or amalgamation with another company or unless the company has, at the commencement of the winding up, under such a contract with insurers as is mentioned in section 14 of the Workmen’s Compensation Act, 1923 (19 of 1923), rights capable of being transferred to and vested in the workmen, all amount due in respect of any compensation or liability for compensation under the said Act in respect of the death or disablement of any workman of the company;

   (iv) all sums due to any workman from provident fund, pension fund, gratuity fund or any other fund maintained by the company.

The following payment should be made in priority to secured creditors:

   (i) All wages or salary including wages payable;

   (ii) all accrued holiday remuneration becoming payable to any workman

   (iii) If the above payments are payable for a period of 2 years preceding the winding up order then the same shall be paid in priority to all other debts (including debts due to secured creditors), within a period of 30 days of sale of assets and shall be subject to such charge over the security of secured creditors.

  c) **Workmen’s portion,** in relation to the security of any secured creditor of a company, means the amount which bears to the value of the security the same proportion as the amount of the workmen’s dues bears to the aggregate of the amount of workmen’s dues and the amount of the debts due to the secured creditors.

**Preferential Creditors**

In a winding up there should be paid in priority to all other debts subject to the provisions of section 326.
Preferential Creditors are as follows:

a. **Government Taxes:** All revenues, taxes, cess and rates due from the company to the Central Government or a State Government or to a local authority at the relevant date, and having become due and payable within the twelve months immediately before that date;

b. **Salary and Wages:** All wages or salary including wages payable for time or piece work and salary earned wholly or in part by way of commission of any employee in respect of services rendered to the company and due for a period not exceeding four months within the 12 months immediately before the relevant date, subject to the condition that the amount payable under this clause to any workman should not exceed such amount as may be notified;

c. **Holiday Remuneration:** All accrued holiday remuneration becoming payable to any employee, or in the case of his death, to any other person claiming under him, on the termination of his employment before, or by the winding up order, or, as the case may be, the dissolution of the company;

d. **Contribution under ESI Act:** Unless the company is being wound up voluntarily merely for the purposes of reconstruction or amalgamation with another company, all amount due in respect of contributions payable during the period of twelve months immediately before the relevant date by the company as the employer of persons under the Employees’ State Insurance Act, 1948 or any other law for the time being in force;

e. **Compensation in respect of death of disablement:** Unless the company has, at the commencement of winding up, under such a contract with any insurer as is mentioned in section 14 of the Workmen's Compensation Act, 1923, rights capable of being transferred to and vested in the workmen, all amount due in respect of any compensation or liability for compensation under the said Act in respect of the death or disablement of any employee of the company. Where any compensation under the said Act is a weekly payment, the amount payable under this clause should be taken to be the amount of the lump sum for which such weekly payment could, if redeemable, be redeemed, if the employer has made an application under that Act;

f. **PF, Pension Fund or Gratuity Fund:** All sums due to any employee from the provident fund, the pension fund, the gratuity fund or any other fund for the welfare of the employees, maintained by the company, and

g. **Expenses of Investigation:** The expenses of any investigation held in pursuance of sections 213 and 216, in so far as they are payable by the company.

Where any advance payment has been made to any employee of a company on account of wages or salary or accrued holiday remuneration himself by some person for that purpose. The person by whom the money was advanced should have a right of priority in respect of the money so advanced and paid-up to the amount. The sum in respect of which the employee or other person in his right would have been entitled to priority in the winding up has been reduced by reason of the payment having been made.

The debts enumerated in this section should—
h. rank equally among themselves and be paid in full, unless the assets are insufficient to meet them, in which case they should abate in equal proportions; and

i. so far as the assets of the company available for payment to general creditors are insufficient to meet them, have priority over the claims of holders of debentures under any floating charge created by the company, and be paid accordingly out of any property comprised in or subject to that charge.

The debts under this section should be discharged forthwith so far as the assets are sufficient to meet them, subject to the retention of such sums as may be necessary for the costs and expenses of the winding up.

In the event of a landlord or other person distraining or having distrained on any goods or effects of the company within three months immediately before the date of a winding up order, the debts to which priority is given under this section should be a first charge on the goods or effects so distrained on or the proceeds of the sale thereof: Provided that, in respect of any money paid under any such charge, the landlord or other person should have the same rights of priority as the person to whom the payment is made. Any remuneration in respect of a period of holiday or of absence from work on medical grounds through sickness or other good cause should be deemed to be wages in respect of services rendered to the company during that period.

Explanations: For the purposes of this section,

- **Accrued Holiday Remuneration includes**, in relation to any person, all sums which, by virtue either of his contract of employment or of any enactment including any order made or direction given thereunder, are payable on account of the remuneration which would, in the ordinary course, have become payable to him in respect of a period of holiday, had his employment with the company continued until he became entitled to be allowed the holiday;

- **Employee** does not include a workman; and

- **Relevant Date** means in the case of a company being wound up by the Tribunal, the date of appointment or first appointment of a provisional liquidator, or if no such appointment was made, the date of the winding up order, unless, in either case, the company had commenced to be wound up voluntarily before that date under the Insolvency and Bankruptcy Code, 2016.

Effect of Floating Charge [Section 332]

Where a company is being wound up, a floating charge on the undertaking or property of the company created within the 12 months immediately preceding the commencement of the winding up, should be invalid unless it is proved that the company immediately after the creation of the charge was solvent except for the amount of any cash paid to the company at the time of and in consideration for or subsequent to the creation of the charge together with interest on that amount at the rate of 5 per cent per annum or such other rate as may be notified by the Central Government in this behalf.
B List Contributories

(a) **Persons**: Shareholders who had transferred Partly Paid Shares (otherwise than by operation of law or by death) within one year, prior to the date of winding up may be called upon to pay an amount to pay off such Creditors as existed on the date of transfer of shares. These Transferors are called as B List Contributories.

(b) **Liability**: Their liability is restricted to the amount not called up when the shares were transferred. They cannot be called upon to pay more than the entire face value of the share. For example, if Shares having Face Value ₹ 100 were paid up ₹ 60, the B List Contributory can be called up to pay a maximum of ₹ 40 only.

(c) **Conditions**: Liability of B List Contributories will crystallize only (a) when the existing assets available with the liquidator are not sufficient to cover the liabilities; (b) when the existing shareholders fail to pay the amount due on the shares to the Liquidator.

VI. Maintenance of Statutory Liquidity Ratio (SLR) and Cash Reserve Ratio (CRR)

**Statutory Liquidity Ratio (SLR)**

In exercise of the powers conferred by sub-section (2A) of Section 24 read with Section 51 and Section 56 of the Banking Regulation Act, 1949 (10 of 1949) and in supersession of the notifications DBR.No.Ret.BC.14/12.02.001/2016-17 dated October 13, 2016 BR.NDBR.No.Ret.BC.91/12.02.001/2017-18 dated October 04, 2017, the Reserve Bank hereby specifies that with effect from the dates given below, every Scheduled Commercial Bank (including RRBs), Local Area Bank, Small Finance Bank, Payments Bank, Primary (urban) co-operative bank and State and central co-operative banks shall continue to maintain in India assets (referred to as ‘SLR assets’) the value of which shall not, at the close of business on any day, be less than:

(i) 19.25 per cent from January 5, 2019
(ii) 19.00 per cent from April 13, 2019
(iii) 18.75 per cent from July 6, 2019
(iv) 18.50 per cent from October 12, 2019
(v) 18.25 per cent from January 4, 2020
(vi) 18.00 per cent from April 11, 2020

of their total net demand and time liabilities in India as on the last Friday of the second preceding fortnight, valued in accordance with the method of valuation specified by the Reserve Bank from time to time.

**Cash Reserve Ratio (CRR)**

The current Cash Reserve Ratio (CRR) is 4% of their Net Demand and Time Liabilities (NDTL) with effect from the fortnight beginning February 09, 2013 vide circular DBOD.No.Ret.BC.76 /12.01.001/2012-13 dated January 29, 2013. The Local Area Banks

© The Institute of Chartered Accountants of India
shall also maintain CRR at 4.00 per cent of its net demand and time liabilities from the
fortnight beginning from February 09, 2013.

VI. Relevant Provisions of the Insurance Act [updated as per the Insurance
(Amendment) Act, 2015]

The provisions of sections 10 and 11 have been modified vide the Insurance Laws
(Amendment) Act, 2015. These amendments have necessitated changes to the IRDA
(Preparation of Financial Statements and Auditors’ Report of Insurance Companies)
Regulations 2002. The significant provisions are as follows:

(1) Forms for final accounts [Section 11(1)]. Every insurer, on or after the date of the
commencement of the Insurance Laws (Amendment) Act, 2015, in respect of
insurance business transacted by him and in respect of his shareholders’ funds,
should, at the expiration of each financial year, prepare with reference to that year,
balance sheet, a profit and loss account, a separate account of receipts and
payments, a revenue account in accordance with the regulations as may be specified.

(2) Audit [Section 12]: The balance sheet, profit and loss account, revenue account and
profit and loss appropriation account of every insurer, in respect of all insurance
business transacted by him, should, unless they are subject to audit under the
Companies Act, 2013, be audited annually by an auditor, and the auditor should in
the audit of all such accounts have the powers of, exercise the functions vested in,
and discharge the duties and be subject to the liabilities and penalties imposed on,
auditors of companies by Section 147 of the Companies Act, 2013.

(3) Register of policies [Section 14(1)]: Every insurer, in respect of all business
transacted by him, should maintain— (a) a record of policies, in which should be
entered, in respect of every policy issued by the insurer, the name and address of the
policyholder, the date when the policy was effected and a record of any transfer,
assignment or nomination of which the insurer has notice; (b) a record of claims,
every claim made together with the date of the claim, the name and address of the
claimant and the date on which the claim was discharged, or, in the case of a claim
which is rejected, the date of rejection and the grounds thereof; and (c) a record of
policies and claims in accordance with clauses (a) and (b) may be maintained in any
such form, including electronic mode, as may be specified by the regulations made
under this Act.

(4) Approved investments (Section 27B(1)): A company carrying on general insurance
business must invest its funds only in approved securities listed in this section.

(5) Payment of commission to authorized agents (Section 40(1)): As per the Insurance
(Amendment) Act 2015, no person should, pay or contract to pay any remuneration
or reward, whether by way of commission or otherwise for soliciting or procuring
insurance business in India to any person except an insurance agent or an
intermediary or insurance intermediary in such manner as may be specified by the regulations.

(6) Limit on expenditure (Sections 40B and 40C): As per the Insurance (Amendment) Act 2015 No insurer should, in respect of insurance business transacted by him in India, spend as expenses of management in any financial year any amount exceeding the amount as may be specified by the regulations made under this Act and every insurer transacting insurance business in India should furnish to the Authority, the details of expenses of management in such manner and form as may be specified by the regulations made under this Act."

(7) Sufficiency of assets [Section 64VA(1)]: Every insurer and re-insurer should at all times maintain an excess of value of assets over the amount of liabilities of, not less than fifty per cent. of the amount of minimum capital as stated under section 6 and arrived at in the manner specified by the regulations.

(8) Segregation of Policyholders’ and Shareholders’ Funds by the insurers carrying on General Insurance, Health Insurance and Reinsurance business: Section 11 (2) of the Insurance Laws (Amendment) Act, 2015 mandates that every insurer shall keep separate funds of shareholders and policyholders.

(9) Unearned Premium Reserve (UPR): A Reserve for Unearned Premium shall be created as the amount representing that part of the premium written which is attributable to, and is to be allocated to the succeeding accounting periods. Such Reserves shall be computed as under:

a) Marine Hull: 100 percent of Net Written Premium during the preceding twelve months;

b) Other Segments: Insurers have an option to create UPR either at 50 percent of Net Written Premium of preceding twelve months or on the basis of 1/365th method on the unexpired period of the respective policies.

The insurers can follow either percentage or 1/365th method for computation of UPR of the other segments. However, Insurers shall follow the method of provisioning of UPR in a consistent manner. Any change in the method of provisioning can be done only with the prior written approval of the Authority.

10. Recoupment of the Deficit: Every Insurer shall ensure that the policyholders’ fund is fully supported by the policyholders' investments shown in Schedule-SA. Therefore, any deficit/shortfall in policyholders' investments arising out of the loss in the Revenue Account or otherwise shall be recouped by transfer of securities from the shareholders' investments to the policyholders' investments on a half yearly basis. The valuation of such securities shall be in accordance with the valuation norms as specified in the IRDA (Preparation of Financial Statements and Auditors' Report) Regulations, 2002.
11. Investment made out of the policyholders' funds: Investment made out of the policyholders' funds shall be shown in a separate schedule i.e., 8 A. The format of the same is given as below:

Annexure

SCHEDULE- 8A
INVESTMENTS-POLICYHOLDERS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Particulars</th>
<th>Current Year (’000)</th>
<th>Previous Year (’000)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LONG TERM INVESTMENTS</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Government securities and Government guaranteed bonds including Treasury Bills</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Other Approved Securities</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Other Investments</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) Shares - i) Equity, ii) Preference</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) Mutual Funds</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) Debentures/ Bonds</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(d) Investment Property-Real Estate</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(e) Other Securities (to be specified)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Investments in Infrastructure and Housing</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sub-Total</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>SHORT TERM INVESTMENTS</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Government securities and Government guaranteed bonds including Treasury Bills</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Other Approved Securities</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Other Investments</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) Shares- i) Equity, ii) Preference</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) Mutual Funds</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) Debentures/ Bonds</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(d) Other Securities (to be specified)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Investments in Infrastructure and Housing</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sub-Total</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**NOTE:** Chapters 2, 4, 5 and 6 of the Intermediate Paper 5 Advanced Accounting Study Material have been revised in line with the Companies (Accounting Standards) Amendment Rules, Banking and IRDA Regulations. These revised chapters have been uploaded on the BoS Knowledge Portal of the Institute’s website. The students of Intermediate level (old course) who
have either July, 2015 Edition or prior Edition of the Study Material are required to ignore these chapters given in that material and are advised to read the updated chapters uploaded on the BoS Knowledge Portal of the Institute’s website at the below mentioned link:
https://www.icai.org/post.html?post_id=12433

B. **Not applicable for November, 2019 examination**

*Non-Applicability of Ind AS for November, 2019 Examination*

The Ministry of Corporate Affairs has notified Companies (Indian Accounting Standards) Rules, 2015 on 16th February, 2015, for compliance by certain class of companies. These Ind AS are not applicable for November, 2019 Examination.

**PART – II : QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS**

**QUESTIONS**

**Dissolution of partnership firm**

1. P, Q, R and S are sharing profits and losses in the ratio 3 : 3 : 2 : 1. Frauds committed by R during the year were found out and it was decided to dissolve the partnership on 31st March, 2019 when their Balance Sheet was as under:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Liabilities</th>
<th>Amount (₹)</th>
<th>Assets</th>
<th>Amount (₹)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Capitals:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P</td>
<td>1,50,000</td>
<td>Building</td>
<td>1,90,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Q</td>
<td>1,50,000</td>
<td>Stock</td>
<td>1,30,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Investments</td>
<td>50,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S</td>
<td>60,000</td>
<td>Debtors</td>
<td>70,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>General reserve</td>
<td>40,000</td>
<td>Cash</td>
<td>30,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trade creditors</td>
<td>80,000</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>40,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bills payable</td>
<td>30,000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>5,10,000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Following information is given to you:

(i) A cheque for ₹ 7,000 received from debtor was not recorded in the books and was misappropriated by R.

(ii) Investments costing ₹ 8,000 were sold by R at ₹ 11,000 and the funds transferred to his personal account. This sale was omitted from the firm’s books.

(iii) A creditor agreed to take over investments of the book value of ₹ 9,000 at ₹ 13,000. The rest of the creditors were paid off at a discount of 5%.
(iv) The other assets realized as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Asset</th>
<th>Realized Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Building</td>
<td>110% of book value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stock</td>
<td>₹ 1,20,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Investments</td>
<td>The rest of investments were sold at a profit of ₹ 7,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Debtors</td>
<td>The rest of the debtors were realized at a discount of 10%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(v) The bills payable were settled at a discount of ₹ 500.

(vi) The expenses of dissolution amounted to ₹ 8,000.

(vii) It was found out that realization from R’s private assets would only be ₹ 7,000.

Prepare Realisation Account, Cash Account and Partner’s Capital Accounts. All workings should part of your answer.

**Conversion of Partnership firms into a company**

2. P, Q and R are partners sharing profits and losses in the ratio 3 : 2 : 1 after allowing interest on capital @ 9% p.a. Their Balance Sheet as at 31st March, 2019 are as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Liabilities</th>
<th>₹</th>
<th>Assets</th>
<th>₹</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Capital Accounts:</td>
<td></td>
<td>Plant &amp; Machinery</td>
<td>1,08,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P</td>
<td>50,000</td>
<td>Fixtures</td>
<td>20,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Q</td>
<td>30,000</td>
<td>Stock</td>
<td>50,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R</td>
<td>20,000</td>
<td>Sundry Debtors</td>
<td>30,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reserve Fund</td>
<td>60,000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Creditors</td>
<td>48,000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2,08,000</td>
<td></td>
<td>2,08,000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

They applied for conversion of the firm into a Private Limited Company named PQR Pvt. Ltd. and the certificate was received on 01-04-2019. They decided to maintain same profit sharing ratio and to preserve the priority in regard to repayment of capital as far as possible. For that purpose, they decided to insert a clause of issuance of Preference shares in Memorandum of Association in addition to issuance of Equity shares of ₹ 10 each.

On 01-04-2019, the value of goodwill is to be determined on the basis of 2 years' purchase of the average profit from the business of the last 5 years. The particulars of profits are as under:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Year ended 31.03.2015</th>
<th>Profit</th>
<th>₹</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>10,000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Year ended 31.03.2016 | Loss | 5,000
Year ended 31.03.2017 | Profit | 18,000
Year ended 31.03.2018 | Profit | 27,000
Year ended 31.03.2019 | Profit | 30,000

The loss for the year ended 31-03-2016 was on account of loss by strike to the extent of 10,000.

It was agreed that rest of the assets are valued on the basis of the Balance Sheet as at 31-03-2019 except Plant & Machinery which is valued at ₹ 1,02,000.

You are required to prepare (a) the Balance Sheet of the Company as at 01-04-2019, (b) Partners’ Capital Accounts and (c) Statement showing the final settlement between the partners taking Q’s capital as basis.

**Sale of Partnership firm to Company**

3. ‘X’ and ‘Y’ carrying on business in partnership sharing Profit and Losses equally, wished to dissolve the firm and sell the business to ‘X’ Limited Company on 31-3-2019, when the firm’s position was as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Liabilities</th>
<th>₹</th>
<th>Assets</th>
<th>₹</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>X’s Capital</td>
<td>1,50,000</td>
<td>Land and Building</td>
<td>1,00,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Y’s Capital</td>
<td>1,00,000</td>
<td>Furniture</td>
<td>40,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Creditors</td>
<td>60,000</td>
<td>Stock</td>
<td>1,00,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Debtors</td>
<td>66,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Cash</td>
<td>4,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total</strong></td>
<td>3,10,000</td>
<td><strong>Total</strong></td>
<td>3,10,000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The arrangement with X Limited Company was as follows:

(i) Land and Building was purchased at 20% more than the book value.

(ii) Furniture and stock were purchased at book values less 15%.

(iii) The goodwill of the firm was valued at ₹ 40,000.

(iv) The firm’s debtors, cash and creditors were not to be taken over, but the company agreed to collect the book debts of the firm and discharge the creditors of the firm as an agent, for which services, the company was to be paid at 5% on all collections from the firm’s debtors and 3% on cash paid to firm’s creditors.

(v) The purchase price was to be discharged by the company in fully paid equity shares of ₹ 10 each at a premium of ₹ 2 per share. The shares received from the company were distributed between the partners in the ratio of their final claims.
The company collected all the amounts from debtors. The creditors were paid off less by ₹ 1,000 allowed by them as discount. The company paid the balance due to the vendors in cash.

Prepare the Realisation account, the Capital accounts of the partners and the Cash account in the books of partnership firm.

**Limited Liabilities Partnership (LLP)**

4. Differentiate on ordinary partnership firm with an LLP. Under what circumstances, an LLP may be wound up by the Tribunal?

**ESOPs**

5. The following particulars in respect of stock options granted by a company are available:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grant date</th>
<th>April 1, 2016</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Number of employees covered</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of options granted per employee</td>
<td>1,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fair value of option per share on grant date (₹)</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The options will vest to employees serving continuously for 3 years from vesting date, provided the share price is ₹ 65 or above at the end of 2018-19.

The estimates of number of employees satisfying the condition of continuous employment were 48 on 31/03/17, 47 on 31/03/18. The number of employees actually satisfying the condition of continuous employment was 45.

The share price at the end of 2018-19 was ₹ 68.

You are required to compute expenses to be recognised in each year in the books of the company.

**Buy Back of Securities**

6. Umesh Ltd. resolves to buy back 4 lakhs of its fully paid equity shares of ₹ 10 each at ₹ 22 per share. This buyback is in compliance with the provisions of the Companies Act and does not exceed 25% of Company's paid up capital in the financial year. For the purpose, it issues 1 lakh 11% preference shares of ₹ 10 each at par, the entire amount being payable with applications. The company uses ₹ 16 lakhs of its balance in Securities Premium Account apart from its adequate balance in General Reserve to fulfill the legal requirements regarding buy-back. Give necessary journal entries to record the above transactions.

**Redemption of Debentures**

7. Omega Limited (a manufacturing company) recently made a public issue in respect of which the following information is available:
(a) No. of partly convertible debentures issued- 2,00,000; face value and issue price- ₹ 100 per debenture.

(b) Convertible portion per debenture- 60%, date of conversion- on expiry of 6 months from the date of closing of issue i.e 31.10.20X1.

(c) Date of closure of subscription lists- 1.5.20X1, date of allotment- 1.6.20X1, rate of interest on debenture- 15% payable from the date of allotment, value of equity share for the purpose of conversion- ₹ 60 (Face Value ₹ 10).

(d) Underwriting Commission- 2%.

(e) Number of debentures applied for - 1,50,000.

(f) Interest payable on debentures half-yearly on 30th September and 31st March.

Write relevant journal entries for all transactions arising out of the above during the year ended 31st March, 20X2 (including cash and bank entries).

Underwriting of Shares

8. A company made a public issue of 2,00,000 equity shares of ₹ 10 each at a premium of ₹ 2 per share. The entire issue was underwritten by the underwriters L, M, N and O in the ratio of 4:3:2:1 respectively with the provision of firm underwriting of 5,000, 4,000, 2,000 and 2,000 shares respectively.

The company received application for 1,50,000 shares (excluding firm underwriting) from public, out of which applications for 55,000, 40,000, 42,000 and 8,000 shares were marked in favour of L, M, N and O respectively.

Calculate the liability of each underwriter as regards the number of shares to be taken up assuming that the benefit of underwriting is not given to the individual underwriter.

Amalgamation of Companies

9. The following is the summarized Balance Sheet of A Ltd. as at 31st March, 2019:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Liabilities</th>
<th>₹</th>
<th>Assets</th>
<th>₹</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>8,000 Equity shares of ₹ 100 each</td>
<td>8,00,000</td>
<td>Building</td>
<td>3,40,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10% Debentures</td>
<td>4,00,000</td>
<td>Machinery</td>
<td>6,40,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loans</td>
<td>1,60,000</td>
<td>Inventory</td>
<td>2,20,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trade payables</td>
<td>3,20,000</td>
<td>Trade receivables</td>
<td>2,60,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>General Reserve</td>
<td>80,000</td>
<td>Bank</td>
<td>1,36,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Patent</td>
<td>1,30,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Share issue Expenses</td>
<td>34,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>17,60,000</td>
<td></td>
<td>17,60,000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

© The Institute of Chartered Accountants of India
B Ltd. agreed to absorb A Ltd. on the following terms and conditions:

1. B Ltd. would take over all assets, except bank balance and Patent at their book values less 10%. Goodwill is to be valued at 4 year’s purchase of super profits, assuming that the normal rate of return be 8% on the combined amount of share capital and general reserve.

2. B Ltd. is to take over trade payables at book value.

3. The purchase consideration is to be paid in cash to the extent of ₹ 6,00,000 and the balance in fully paid equity shares of ₹ 100 each at ₹ 125 per share.

The average profit is ₹ 1,24,400. The liquidation expenses amounted to ₹ 16,000. B Ltd. sold prior to 31st March, 2018 goods costing ₹ 1,20,000 to A Ltd. for ₹ 1,60,000. ₹ 1,00,000 worth of goods are still in inventory of A Ltd. on 31st March, 2018. Trade payables of A Ltd. include ₹ 40,000 still due to B Ltd.

Show the necessary Ledger Accounts to close the books of A Ltd. and prepare the Balance Sheet of B Ltd. as at 1st April, 2019 after the takeover.

### Internal Reconstruction of a Company

10. Platinum Limited has decided to reconstruct the Balance Sheet since it has accumulated huge losses. The following is the draft Balance Sheet of the company as on 31st March, 2019 before reconstruction:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Liabilities</th>
<th>Amount (₹)</th>
<th>Assets</th>
<th>Amount (₹)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Share Capital</td>
<td></td>
<td>Goodwill</td>
<td>22,00,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50,000 shares of ₹ 50 each fully paid up</td>
<td>25,00,000</td>
<td>Land &amp; Building</td>
<td>42,70,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1,00,000 shares of ₹ 50 each paid up</td>
<td>40,00,000</td>
<td>Machinery</td>
<td>8,50,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Capital Reserve</td>
<td>5,00,000</td>
<td>Inventories</td>
<td>3,20,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8% Debentures of ₹ 100 each</td>
<td>4,00,000</td>
<td>Trade receivables</td>
<td>10,90,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12% Debentures of ₹ 100 each</td>
<td>6,00,000</td>
<td>Cash at Bank</td>
<td>2,68,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trade payables</td>
<td>12,40,000</td>
<td>Profit &amp; Loss Account</td>
<td>7,82,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Outstanding Expenses</td>
<td>10,60,000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>1,03,00,000</td>
<td>Total</td>
<td>1,03,00,000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Following is the interest of Mr. Shiv and Mr. Ganesh in Platinum Limited:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Mr. Shiv</th>
<th>Mr. Ganesh</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>8% Debentures</td>
<td>3,00,000</td>
<td>1,00,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12% Debentures</td>
<td>4,00,000</td>
<td>2,00,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>7,00,000</td>
<td>3,00,000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following scheme of internal reconstruction was framed and implemented, as approved by the court and concerned parties:

1. Uncalled capital is to be called up in full and then all the shares to be converted into Equity Shares of ₹ 40 each.

2. The existing shareholders agree to subscribe in cash, fully paid up equity shares of 40 each for ₹ 12,50,000.

3. Trade payables are given option of either to accept fully paid equity shares of ₹ 40 each for the amount due to them or to accept 70% of the amount due to them in cash in full settlement of their claim. Trade payables for ₹ 7,50,000 accept equity shares and rest of them opted for cash towards full and final settlement of their claim.

4. Mr. Shiv agrees to cancel debentures amounting to ₹ 2,00,000 out of total debentures due to him and agree to accept 15% Debentures for the balance amount due. He also agrees to subscribe further 15% Debentures in cash amounting to ₹ 1,00,000.

5. Mr. Ganesh agrees to cancel debentures amounting to ₹ 50,000 out of total debentures due to him and agree to accept 15% Debentures for the balance amount due.

6. Land & Building to be revalued at ₹ 51,84,000, Machinery at ₹ 7,20,000, Computers at ₹ 4,00,000, Inventories at ₹ 3,50,000 and Trade receivables at 10% less to as they are appearing in Balance Sheet as above.

7. Outstanding Expenses are fully paid in cash.

8. Goodwill and Profit & Loss A/c will be written off and balance, if any, of Capital Reduction A/c will be adjusted against Capital Reserve.

You are required to pass necessary Journal Entries for all the above transactions and draft the company's Balance Sheet immediately after the reconstruction.

**Liquidation of Company**

11. Given below is the Balance Sheet of OM Limited as on 31.3.2019:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Liabilities</th>
<th>₹</th>
<th>Assets</th>
<th>₹</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Share Capital:</td>
<td></td>
<td>Fixed Assets:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14%, 1,60,000 cumulative preference</td>
<td></td>
<td>Land</td>
<td>1,60,000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
On 31.3.2019 the company went into voluntary liquidation. The dividend on 14% preference shares was in arrears for one year. Trade payables include preferential creditors amounting to ₹ 1,20,000.

The assets realized the following sums:

Land ₹ 3,20,000; Buildings ₹ 8,00,000; Plant and machinery ₹ 20,00,000; Patent ₹ 2,00,000; Inventory ₹ 6,40,000; Trade receivables ₹ 8,00,000.

The expenses of liquidation amounted to ₹ 1,17,736. The liquidator is entitled to a commission of 2% on all assets realized (except cash at bank) and 2% on amounts among unsecured creditors other than preferential creditors. All payments were made on 30th June, 2019. Interest on mortgage loan shall be ignored at the time of payment.

Prepare the liquidator’s final statement of account.

Financial Statements of Insurance Companies

12. From the following information as on 31st March, 2019 of Xeta Insurance Co. Ltd. engaged in fire insurance business, prepare the Revenue Account, reserving 50% of the net premiums for unexpired risks and an additional reserve of ₹ 7,00,000:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Particulars</th>
<th>Amount ₹</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Reserve for unexpired risk on 31st March, 2018</td>
<td>15,00,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Additional reserve on 31st March, 2018</td>
<td>3,00,000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Financial Statements of Banking Companies

13. The following is an extract from the Trial Balance of Jeevan Bank Ltd. as at 31st March, 2019:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Amount</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Claims paid</td>
<td>19,20,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Estimated liability in respect of outstanding claims on 31st March, 2018</td>
<td>1,95,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Estimated liability in respect of outstanding claims on 31st March, 2019</td>
<td>2,70,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expenses of management (including ₹ 90,000 in connection with claims)</td>
<td>8,40,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Re-insurance premium paid</td>
<td>2,25,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Re-insurance recoveries</td>
<td>60,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Premiums</td>
<td>33,60,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interest and dividend (gross before TDS)</td>
<td>1,50,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Profit on sale of investments</td>
<td>30,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Commission</td>
<td>3,50,000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Amount</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rebate on bills discounted as on 1-4-2018</td>
<td>1,36,518 (Cr.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Discount received</td>
<td>3,40,312 (Cr.)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Analysis of the bills discounted reveals as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Amount (₹)</th>
<th>Due date</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5,60,000</td>
<td>June 1, 2019</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17,44,000</td>
<td>June 8, 2019</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11,28,000</td>
<td>June 21, 2019</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16,24,000</td>
<td>July 1, 2019</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12,00,000</td>
<td>July 5, 2019</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You are required to find out the amount of discount to be credited to Profit and Loss account for the year ending 31st March, 2019 and pass Journal Entries. The rate of discount may be taken at 10% per annum.

Departmental Accounts

14. A firm has two departments—Sawmill and Furniture. Furniture is made with wood supplied by the Sawmill department at its usual selling price. From the following figures prepare Departmental Trading and Profit and Loss Account for the year 2018:
The value of stocks in the furniture department consist of 75 % wood and 25 % other expenses. The Sawmill Department earned Gross Profit at 15 % on sales in 2017. General expenses of the business as a whole came to ₹ 55,000. The firm adopts FIFO method for assigning costs to inventories.

Branch Accounting

15. From the following particulars relating to Pune branch for the year ending December 31, 2018, prepare Branch Account in the books of Head office.
Petty Cash 1,000
Annual Insurance up to March 31, 2019 600 6,000
Goods returned by the Branch 1,000
Goods returned by the debtors 2,000
Stock on December 31, 2018 5,000
Petty Cash spent by branch 850
Provide depreciation on furniture 10% p.a.

Goods costing ₹ 1,200 were destroyed on account of fire and a sum of ₹ 1,000 was received from the Insurance Company.

Framework for Preparation and Presentation of Financial Statements

16. Aman started a business on 1st April 20X1 with ₹ 24,00,000 represented by 1,20,000 units of ₹ 20 each. During the financial year ending on 31st March, 20X2, he sold the entire stock for ₹ 30 each. In order to maintain the capital intact, calculate the maximum amount, which can be withdrawn by Aman in the year 20X1-2 if Financial Capital is maintained at historical cost.

Problems based on Accounting Standards

AS 4 Contingencies and Events Occurring after the Balance Sheet Date

17. (a) An earthquake destroyed a major warehouse of PQR Ltd. on 30.4.2019. The accounting year of the company ended on 31.3.2019. The accounts were approved on 30.6.2019. The loss from earthquake is estimated at ₹ 25 lakhs. State with reasons, whether the loss due to earthquake is an adjusting or non-adjusting event and how the fact of loss is to be disclosed by the company.

AS 5 Net Profit or loss for the Period, Prior Period Items and Changes in Accounting Policies.

(b) The Accountant of Mobile Limited has sought your opinion with relevant reasons, whether the following transactions will be treated as change in Accounting Policy or not for the year ended 31st March, 2019. Please advise him in the following situations in accordance with the provisions of relevant Accounting Standard;

(i) Provision for doubtful debts was created @ 2% till 31st March, 2018. From the Financial year 2018-2019, the rate of provision has been changed to 3%.

(ii) During the year ended 31st March, 2019, the management has introduced a formal gratuity scheme in place of ad-hoc ex-gratia payments to employees on retirement.

(iii) Till the previous year the furniture was depreciated on straight line basis over a period of 5 years. From current year, the useful life of furniture has been
changed to 3 years.

(iv) Management decided to pay pension to those employees who have retired after completing 5 years of service in the organization. Such employees will get pension of ₹ 20,000 per month. Earlier there was no such scheme of pension in the organization.

(v) During the year ended 31st March, 2019, there was change in cost formula in measuring the cost of inventories.

AS 11 The Effects of Changes in Foreign Exchange Rates

18. (a) (i) Trade receivables as on 31.3.2019 in the books of XYZ Ltd. include an amount receivable from Umesh ₹ 5,00,000 recorded at the prevailing exchange rate on the date of sales, i.e. at US $ 1 = ₹ 58.50. US $ 1 = ₹ 61.20 on 31.3.2019.

   Explain briefly the accounting treatment needed in this case as per AS 11 as on 31.3.2019.

(ii) Power Track Ltd. purchased a plant for US$ 50,000 on 31st October, 2018 payable after 6 months. The company entered into a forward contract for 6 months @ ₹ 64.25 per Dollar. On 31st October, 2018, the exchange rate was ₹ 61.50 per Dollar.

   You are required to recognise the profit or loss on forward contract in the books of the company for the year ended 31st March, 2019.

AS 12 Accounting for Government Grants

(b) Samrat Limited has set up its business in a designated backward area which entitles the company for subsidy of 25% of the total investment from Government of India. The company has invested ₹ 80 crores in the eligible investments. The company is eligible for the subsidy and has received ₹ 20 crores from the government in February 2019. The company wants to recognize the said subsidy as its income to improve the bottom line of the company.

   Do you approve the action of the company in accordance with the Accounting Standard?

AS 16 Borrowing Costs

19. (a) Rainbow Limited borrowed an amount of ₹ 150 crores on 1.4.2018 for construction of boiler plant @ 11% p.a. The plant is expected to be completed in 4 years. Since the weighted average cost of capital is 13% p.a., the accountant of Rainbow Ltd. capitalized ₹ 19.50 crores for the accounting period ending on 31.3.2019. Due to surplus fund out of ₹ 150 crores, income of ₹ 3.50 crores was earned and credited to profit and loss account. Comment on the above treatment of accountant with reference to relevant accounting standard.
AS 19 Leases
(b) Suraj Limited wishes to obtain a machine costing ₹ 30 lakhs by way of lease. The effective life of the machine is 14 years, but the company requires it only for the first 3 years. It enters into an agreement with Star Ltd., for a lease rental for ₹ 3 lakhs p.a. payable in arrears and the implicit rate of interest is 15%. The chief accountant of Suraj Limited is not sure about the treatment of these lease rentals and seeks your advise. (use annuity factor at @ 15% for 3 years as 3.36)

AS 26 Intangible Assets
20. (a) K Ltd. launched a project for producing product X in October, 2018. The Company incurred ₹ 40 lakhs towards Research and Development expenses upto 31st March, 2019. Due to prevailing market conditions, the Management came to conclusion that the product cannot be manufactured and sold in the market for the next 10 years. The Management hence wants to defer the expenditure write off to future years.

Advise the Company as per the applicable Accounting Standard.

AS 29 Provisions, Contingent Liabilities and Contingent Assets
(b) XYZ Ltd. has not made provision for warrantee in respect of certain goods due to the fact that the company can claim the warranty cost from the original supplier. Hence the accountant of the company says that the company is not having any liability for warrantees on a particular date as the amount gets reimbursed. You are required to comment on the accounting treatment done by the XYZ Ltd. in line with the provisions of AS 29.

SUGGESTED ANSWERS/HINTS

1. Realisation Account

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Particulars</th>
<th>₹</th>
<th>Particulars</th>
<th>₹</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>To Building</td>
<td>1,90,000</td>
<td>By Trade creditors</td>
<td>80,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To Stock</td>
<td>1,30,000</td>
<td>By Bills payable</td>
<td>30,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To Investment</td>
<td>50,000</td>
<td>By Cash</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To Debtors</td>
<td>70,000</td>
<td>Building</td>
<td>2,09,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To Cash-creditors paid (W.N.1)</td>
<td>63,650</td>
<td>Stock</td>
<td>1,20,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To Cash-expenses</td>
<td>8,000</td>
<td>Investments (W.N.2)</td>
<td>40,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To Cash-bills payable (30,000-500)</td>
<td>29,500</td>
<td>Debtors (W.N. 3)</td>
<td>56,700</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Partners' Capital Accounts

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Particulars</th>
<th>P</th>
<th>Q</th>
<th>R</th>
<th>S</th>
<th>Particulars</th>
<th>P</th>
<th>Q</th>
<th>R</th>
<th>S</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>To Balance b/d</td>
<td>40,000</td>
<td>By Balance b'd</td>
<td>1,50,000</td>
<td>1,50,000</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>60,000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To Realisation A/c-Debtors-misappropriation</td>
<td>7,000</td>
<td>By General reserve</td>
<td>13,333</td>
<td>13,333</td>
<td>8,889</td>
<td>4,445</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To Realisation A/c-Investment-misappropriation</td>
<td>11,000</td>
<td>By Realisation profit</td>
<td>4,183</td>
<td>4,183</td>
<td>2,789</td>
<td>1,396</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To R's capital A/c (W.N. 4)</td>
<td>16,384</td>
<td>16,384</td>
<td>6,554</td>
<td>By Cash A/c</td>
<td>7,000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To Cash A/c</td>
<td>1,51,132</td>
<td>1,51,132</td>
<td>59,286</td>
<td>By P's capital A/c</td>
<td>16,384</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Working Notes:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Amount paid to creditors in cash</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Book value</strong></td>
<td>₹ 80,000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Less: Creditors taking over investments</strong></td>
<td>(₹ 13,000)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Less: Discount @ 5%</strong></td>
<td>(₹ 3,350)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>₹ 63,650</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Amount received from sale of investments</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Book value</strong></td>
<td>₹ 50,000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Less: Misappropriated by R</strong></td>
<td>(₹ 8,000)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Less: Taken over by a creditor</strong></td>
<td>(₹ 9,000)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Add: Profit on sale of investments</strong></td>
<td>₹ 7,000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cash received from sale of remaining investment</strong></td>
<td>₹ 40,000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Amount received from debtors</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Book value</strong></td>
<td>₹ 70,000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Less: Unrecorded receipt</strong></td>
<td>(₹ 7,000)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Less: Discount @ 10%</strong></td>
<td>(₹ 6,300)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>₹ 56,700</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Deficiency of R</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Balance of capital as on 31st March, 2019</strong></td>
<td>₹ 40,000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Debtors - misappropriation 7,000
Investment - misappropriation 11,000
Less: Realisation Profit (2,789)
  General reserve (8,889)
  Contribution from private assets (7,000)
Net deficiency of capital 39,322

This deficiency of ₹ 39,322 in R’s capital account will be shared by other partners P, Q and S in their capital ratio of 15 : 15 : 6.

Accordingly,

P’s share of deficiency = [39,322 x (15/36)] = ₹ 16,384
Q’s share of deficiency = [39,322 x (15/36)] = ₹ 16,384
S’s share of deficiency = [39,322 x (6/36)] = ₹ 6,554

2. (a) Balance Sheet of the PQR Pvt. Ltd. as on 1-4-2019

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Equity and Liabilities</th>
<th>Note No.</th>
<th>₹</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Shareholders funds</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Share capital</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1,90,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Current liabilities</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trade Payables</td>
<td></td>
<td>48,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td></td>
<td>2,38,000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Assets                 |          |   |
| Non-current assets     |          |   |
| Property, Plant and Equipment | 2 | 1,22,000 |
| Intangible assets      | 3        | 36,000 |
| Current assets         |          |   |
| Inventories            |          | 50,000 |
| Trade Receivables      |          | 30,000 |
| Total                  |          | 2,38,000 |
Notes to Accounts

1. Share Capital
   - Equity share capital: 18,000 fully paid shares of ₹ 10 each = ₹ 180,000
   - Preference share capital (9% Preference Shares) = ₹ 10,000
   (All the shares have been issued for consideration other than cash) = ₹ 1,90,000

2. Tangible assets
   - Plant and Machinery = ₹ 1,02,000
   - Fixtures = ₹ 20,000
   Total = ₹ 1,22,000

3. Intangible assets
   - Goodwill = ₹ 36,000

(b) In the books of Partnership Firm

Partners’ Capital Accounts

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>P ₹</th>
<th>Q ₹</th>
<th>R ₹</th>
<th></th>
<th>P ₹</th>
<th>Q ₹</th>
<th>R ₹</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>To Plant and machinery account</td>
<td>3,000</td>
<td>2,000</td>
<td>1,000</td>
<td>By Balance b/d</td>
<td>50,000</td>
<td>30,000</td>
<td>20,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To Equity shares in PQR Pvt. Ltd.</td>
<td>90,000</td>
<td>60,000</td>
<td>30,000</td>
<td>By Reserve fund</td>
<td>30,000</td>
<td>20,000</td>
<td>10,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To 9% Preference shares in PQR Pvt. Ltd.</td>
<td>5,000</td>
<td>5,000</td>
<td>5,000</td>
<td>By Realization A/c (Profit on sale of business)</td>
<td>18,000</td>
<td>12,000</td>
<td>6,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>98,000</td>
<td>62,000</td>
<td>36,000</td>
<td></td>
<td>98,000</td>
<td>62,000</td>
<td>36,000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(c) Statement showing the final settlement between the Partners taking Q’s capital as basis

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>P ₹</th>
<th>Q ₹</th>
<th>R ₹</th>
<th>Total ₹</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Value of Equity Shares to be allotted, taking Q’s capital as basis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P’s Capital = 60,000 × 3/2</td>
<td>90,000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R’s Capital = 60,000 × 1/2</td>
<td>60,000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>90,000</td>
<td>60,000</td>
<td>30,000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Total Value of Equity Shares allotted to P, Q and R
9% Preference Shares to be allotted to P (95,000-90,000) 5,000
9% Preference Shares to be allotted to R (35,000-30,000) 5,000
Total Value of Preference Shares allotted to P and R 10,000
Total Purchase Consideration 1,90,000

Taking Q’s capital as Basis, both P and R have ₹ 5,000 each as excess in their capital account balances. Since interest on capital is meant to compensate those whose capital is in excess of proportionate limits and since in the case of partners it is an appropriation of profit, it will be proper to give 9% preference shares to P and R for ₹ 5,000 each and the remaining amount of ₹ 1,80,000 in the form of Equity Shares to be divided among P, Q and R in the ratio 3:2:1. They will then share the company’s profit in the ratio 3:2:1 after allowing preference dividend.

Working Notes:

1. Calculation of goodwill

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Profits</td>
<td>10,000</td>
<td>(5,000)</td>
<td>18,000</td>
<td>27,000</td>
<td>30,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adjustment for abnormal loss in 2015-16</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>10,000</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total Profit from 2014-15 to 2018-19</td>
<td>10,000</td>
<td>5,000</td>
<td>18,000</td>
<td>27,000</td>
<td>30,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Average Profit (90,000 / 5)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>18,000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Goodwill equal to 2 years’ purchase</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>36,000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Purchase consideration -

Assets :
- Goodwill 36,000
- Plant & Machinery 1,02,000
- Fixtures 20,000
- Stock 50,000

© The Institute of Chartered Accountants of India
Sundry Debtors \[30,000\]  
\[2,38,000\]  

Less: Liabilities:  
Creditors \[48,000\]  
Purchase Consideration \[1,90,000\]

3. Books of Partnership Firm

Realisation Account

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>To Land &amp; Building</th>
<th>1,00,000</th>
<th>By Sundry Creditors</th>
<th>60,000</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>To Furniture</td>
<td>40,000</td>
<td>By X Ltd. Co. - Sundry Debtors</td>
<td>66,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To Stock</td>
<td>1,00,000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To Debtors</td>
<td>66,000</td>
<td>Less: Commission on 66,000</td>
<td>3,300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To X Ltd. Co. - Sundry Creditors</td>
<td>59,000</td>
<td>By X Ltd. Co. - Purchase consideration (\text{(W.N.1)})</td>
<td>2,79,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To X Ltd. Co. - Commission</td>
<td>1,770</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To Profits transferred to X's Capital A/c</td>
<td>17,465</td>
<td>34,930</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Y's Capital A/c</td>
<td>17,465</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4,01,700</td>
<td></td>
<td>4,01,700</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Capital Accounts

| To Shares in X Ltd. Co.-\(\text{(W.N.2)}\) | 1,63,980 | 1,15,020 | By Balance b/d | 1,50,000 | 1,00,000 |
| To Cash - Final Payment | 3,485 | 2,445 | By Realisation a/c - Profit | 17,465 | 17,465 |
|                        | 1,67,465 | 1,17,465 |                    | 1,67,465 | 1,17,465 |

Cash Account

| To Balance b/d | 4,000 | By X's Capital A/c - Final payment | 3,485 |
Working Notes:

1. Calculation of Purchase consideration

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Amount</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Land &amp; Building</td>
<td>1,20,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Furniture</td>
<td>34,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stock</td>
<td>85,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Goodwill</td>
<td>40,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total</strong></td>
<td><strong>2,79,000</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Shares received from X Ltd. Co.

The shares received from the company have been distributed between the two partners X & Y in the ratio of their final claims i.e., 1,67,465: 1,17,465.

No. of shares received from the company = \( \frac{2,79,000}{12} = 23,250 \)

X gets \( \frac{23,250 \times 1,67,465}{2,84,930} = 13,665 \) shares valued at 13,665 \( \times 12 = \) ₹1,63,980.

Y gets the remaining 9,585 shares, valued at ₹1,15,020 (9,585 \( \times 12 \))

3. Calculation of net amount received from X Ltd

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Amount</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Amount realized from Debtors</td>
<td>66,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Less: Commission for realization from debtors (5% on 66,000)</td>
<td>3,300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>62,700</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Less: Amount paid to creditors</td>
<td>59,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3,700</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Less: Commission for cash paid to creditors (3% on 59,000)</td>
<td>1,770</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Net amount received</td>
<td>1,930</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
4. Distinction between an ordinary partnership firm and an LLP

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key Elements</th>
<th>Partnerships</th>
<th>LLPs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 Applicable Law</td>
<td>Indian Partnership Act 1932</td>
<td>The Limited Liability Partnerships Act, 2008</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Registration</td>
<td>Optional</td>
<td>Compulsory with ROC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 Creation</td>
<td>Created by an Agreement</td>
<td>Created by Law</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 Body Corporate</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 Separate Legal Entity</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 Perpetual Succession</td>
<td>Partnerships do not have perpetual succession</td>
<td>It has perpetual succession and individual partners may come and go</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 Number of Partners</td>
<td>Minimum 2 and Maximum 20 (subject to 10 for banks)</td>
<td>Minimum 2 but no maximum limit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 Ownership of Assets</td>
<td>Firm cannot own any assets. The partners own the assets of the firm</td>
<td>The LLP as an independent entity can own assets</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 Liability of Partners / Members</td>
<td>Unlimited: Partners are severally and jointly liable for actions of other partners and the firm and their liability extends to their personal assets also.</td>
<td>Limited to the extent of their contribution towards LLP except in case of intentional fraud or wrongful act of omission or commission by a partner.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 Principal Agent Relationship</td>
<td>Partners are the agents of the firm and of each other partner.</td>
<td>Partners are agents of the firm only and not of other partners.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Under section 64 of the LLP Act, 2008, an LLP may be wound up by the Tribunal in the following circumstances:

- If the LLP decides that it should be wound up by the Tribunal;
- If for a period of more than six months, the number of partners of the LLP is reduced below two;
- If the LLP is unable to pay its debts;
• If the LLP has acted against the interests of the integrity and sovereignty of India, the security of the state or public order;
• If the LLP has defaulted in the filing of the Statement of Account and Solvency with the Registrar for five consecutive financial years;
• If the Tribunal is of the opinion that it is just and equitable that the LLP be wound up.

5. The vesting of options is subject to satisfaction of two conditions viz. service condition of continuous employment for 3 years and market condition that the share price at the end of 2018-19 is not less than ₹ 65. The company should recognise value of option over 3-year vesting period from 2016-17 to 2018-19.

**Year 2016-17**
Fair value of option per share = ₹ 9
Number of shares expected to vest under the scheme = 48 × 1,000 = 48,000
Fair value = 48,000 × ₹ 9 = ₹ 4,32,000
Expected vesting period = 3 years
Value of option recognised as expense in 2016-17 = ₹ 4,32,000 /3 = ₹ 1,44,000

**Year 2017-18**
Fair value of option per share = ₹ 9
Number of shares expected to vest under the scheme = 47 × 1,000 = 47,000
Fair value = 47,000 × ₹ 9 = ₹ 4,23,000
Expected vesting period = 3 years
Cumulative value of option to recognise as expense in 2016-17 and 2017-18
= ₹ 4,23,000/ 3 × 2 = ₹ 2,82,000
Value of option recognised as expense in 2016-17 = ₹ 1,44,000
Value of option recognised as expense in 2017-18
= ₹ 2,82,000 – ₹ 1,44,000 = ₹ 1,38,000

**Year 2018-19**
Fair value of option per share = ₹ 9
Number of shares actually vested under the scheme = 45 × 1,000 = 45,000
Fair value = 45,000 × ₹ 9 = ₹ 4,05,000
Vesting period = 3 years
Cumulative value of option to recognise as expense in 2016-17, 2017-18 and 2018-19 = ₹ 4,05,000
Value of option recognised as expense in 2016-17 and 2017-18 = ₹ 2,82,000
Value of option recognised as expense in 2018-19 = ₹ 4,05,000 – ₹ 2,82,000 = ₹ 1,23,000

6. Journal Entries in the books of Umesh Ltd.

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>1.</strong> Bank A/c</td>
<td>Dr. 10,00,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To 11% Preference share application &amp; allotment A/c</td>
<td>10,00,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Being receipt of application money on preference shares)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| **2.** 11% Preference share application & allotment A/c | Dr. 10,00,000 |
| To 11% Preference share capital A/c | 10,00,000 |
| (Being allotment of 1 lakh preference shares) |   |

| **3.** General reserve A/c | Dr. 30,00,000 |
| To Capital redemption reserve A/c | 30,00,000 |
| (Being creation of capital redemption reserve for buy back of shares) |   |

| **4.** Equity share capital A/c | Dr. 40,00,000 |
| Premium payable on buyback A/c | Dr. 48,00,000 |
| To Equity shareholders/Equity shares buy back A/c | 88,00,000 |
| (Amount payable to equity shareholder on buy back) |   |

| **5.** Equity shareholders/Equity shares buy back A/c | Dr. 88,00,000 |
| To Bank A/c | 88,00,000 |
| (Being payment made for buy back of shares) |   |

| **6.** Securities Premium A/c | Dr. 16,00,000 |
| General reserve A/c | 32,00,000 |
| To Premium payable on buyback A/c | 48,00,000 |
| (Being premium on buyback charged from securities premium and general reserve) |   |
Working Notes:

1. **Calculation of amount used from General Reserve Account**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Amount</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Amount paid for buy back of shares (4,00,000 shares x ₹ 22)</td>
<td>88,00,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Less: Proceeds from issue of Preference Shares</td>
<td>10,00,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(1,00,000 shares x ₹10)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Less: Utilisation of Securities Premium Account</td>
<td>16,00,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Balance used from General Reserve Account</td>
<td>62,00,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* Used under Section 68 for buy back</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Used under Section 69 for transfer to CRR (W.N 2)</td>
<td>32,00,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. <strong>Amount to be transferred to Capital Redemption Reserve account</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Amount</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nominal value of shares bought back</td>
<td>40,00,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(4,00,000 shares x ₹10)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Less: Nominal value of Preference Shares issued for such buy back (1,00,000 shares x ₹10)</td>
<td>10,00,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amount transferred to Capital Redemption Reserve Account</td>
<td>30,00,000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7. **Journal Entries in the books of Omega Ltd.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Date</th>
<th>Particulars</th>
<th>Amount Dr.</th>
<th>Amount Cr.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.5.20X1</td>
<td>Bank A/c</td>
<td>Dr. 1,50,00,000</td>
<td>1,50,00,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>To Debenture Application A/c</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(Application money received on 1,50,000 debentures @ ₹ 100 each)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6.20X1</td>
<td>Debenture Application A/c</td>
<td>Dr. 1,50,00,000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Underwriters A/c</td>
<td>Dr. 50,00,000</td>
<td>2,00,00,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>To 15% Debentures A/c</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(Allotment of 1,50,000 debentures to applicants and 50,000 debentures to underwriters)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Underwriting Commission</td>
<td>Dr. 4,00,000</td>
<td>4,00,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>To Underwriters A/c</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(Commission payable to underwriters @ 2%</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Date</td>
<td>Account描述</td>
<td>Dr.</td>
<td>Amount</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>01.06.20X1</td>
<td>Bank A/c</td>
<td></td>
<td>46,00,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>To Underwriters A/c</td>
<td></td>
<td>46,00,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(Amount received from underwriters in settlement of account)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>01.06.20X1</td>
<td>Profit &amp; Loss A/c</td>
<td>20,00,000</td>
<td>20,00,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>To Debenture Redemption Reserve A/c</td>
<td></td>
<td>20,00,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(200,000 X 100 x 25% x 40%)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(Being Debenture Redemption Reserve created on non-convertible debentures)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>01.06.20X1</td>
<td>Debenture Redemption Reserve Investment A/c</td>
<td>12,00,000</td>
<td>12,00,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>To Bank A/c (200,000 X 100 x 15% x 40%)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(Being Investments made for redemption purpose)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30.9.20X1</td>
<td>Debenture Interest A/c</td>
<td>10,00,000</td>
<td>10,00,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>To Bank A/c</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(Interest paid on debentures for 4 months @ 15% on ₹ 2,00,00,000)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31.10.20X1</td>
<td>15% Debentures A/c</td>
<td>1,20,00,000</td>
<td>20,00,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>To Equity Share Capital A/c</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>To Securities Premium A/c</td>
<td></td>
<td>1,00,00,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(Conversion of 60% of debentures into shares of ₹ 60 each with a face value of ₹ 10)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31.3.20X2</td>
<td>Debenture Interest A/c</td>
<td>7,50,000</td>
<td>7,50,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>To Bank A/c</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(Interest paid on debentures for the half year)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(refer working note below)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Working Note:**

Calculation of Debenture Interest for the half year ended 31st March, 20X2

On ₹ 80,00,000 for 6 months @ 15% = ₹ 6,00,000

On ₹ 1,20,00,000 for 1 months @ 15% = ₹ 1,50,000

₹ 7,50,000
8. Calculation of liability of each underwriter assuming that the benefit of firm underwriting is not given to individual underwriter

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Particulars</th>
<th>L</th>
<th>M</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>O</th>
<th>Total</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gross liability</td>
<td>80,000</td>
<td>60,000</td>
<td>40,000</td>
<td>20,000</td>
<td>2,00,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Less: Marked Applications (excluding firm underwriting)</td>
<td>(55,000)</td>
<td>(40,000)</td>
<td>(42,000)</td>
<td>(8,000)</td>
<td>(1,45,000)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Balance</td>
<td>25,000</td>
<td>20,000</td>
<td>(2,000)</td>
<td>12,000</td>
<td>55,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Less: Surplus of N allotted to L, M &amp; O in the ratio of 4:3:1</td>
<td>(1,000)</td>
<td>(750)</td>
<td>2,000</td>
<td>(250)</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Balance</td>
<td>24,000</td>
<td>19,250</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>11,750</td>
<td>55,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Less: Unmarked application including firm underwriting (WN)</td>
<td>(7,200)</td>
<td>(5,400)</td>
<td>(3,600)</td>
<td>(1,800)</td>
<td>(18,000)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Net Liability</td>
<td>16,800</td>
<td>13,850</td>
<td>(3,600)</td>
<td>9,950</td>
<td>37,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Less: Surplus of N allotted to L, M &amp; O in the ratio of 4:3:1</td>
<td>(1,800)</td>
<td>(1,350)</td>
<td>3,600</td>
<td>(450)</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Balance</td>
<td>15,000</td>
<td>12,500</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>9,500</td>
<td>37,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Add: Firm Underwriting</td>
<td>5,000</td>
<td>4,000</td>
<td>2,000</td>
<td>2,000</td>
<td>13,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total Liability</td>
<td>20,000</td>
<td>16,500</td>
<td>2,000</td>
<td>11,500</td>
<td>50,000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Working Note:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Particulars</th>
<th>No. of shares</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Applications received from public</td>
<td>1,50,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Add: Firm underwriting</td>
<td>13,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total Applications</td>
<td>1,63,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Less: Marked application</td>
<td>(1,45,000)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unmarked application including firm underwriting</td>
<td>18,000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

9. Books of A Limited

<p>| Realisation Account |
|---------------------|-----|-----|
| ₹ | ₹ |
| To Building | 3,40,000 | By Trade payables | 3,20,000 |
| To Machinery | 6,40,000 | By B Ltd. | 12,10,000 |
| To Inventory | 2,20,000 | By Equity Shareholders (Loss) | 76,000 |
| To Trade receivables | 2,60,000 | | |
| To Patent | 1,30,000 | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Account Type</th>
<th>Debit</th>
<th>Credit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bank Account</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To Bank (Exp.)</td>
<td>16,000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>16,06,000</td>
<td>16,06,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>10% Debentures Account</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To Bank</td>
<td>4,00,000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4,00,000</td>
<td>4,00,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Loan Account</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To Bank</td>
<td>1,60,000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1,60,000</td>
<td>1,60,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Share Issue Expenses Account</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To Balance b/d</td>
<td>34,000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>34,000</td>
<td>34,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>General Reserve Account</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To Equity shareholders</td>
<td>80,000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>80,000</td>
<td>80,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>B Ltd. Account</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To Realisation A/c</td>
<td>12,10,000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6,00,000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6,10,000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Equity Shares in B Ltd. Account</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To B Ltd.</td>
<td>6,10,000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6,10,000</td>
<td>6,10,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Equity Share Holders Account</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To Realisation</td>
<td>76,000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8,00,000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To Share issue Expenses</td>
<td>34,000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>80,000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To Equity shares in B Ltd.</td>
<td>6,10,000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>80,000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### B Ltd
Balance Sheet as on 1st April, 2019 (An extract)*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Particulars</th>
<th>Notes</th>
<th>₹</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Equity and Liabilities</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Shareholders' funds</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a Share capital</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>4,88,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b Reserves and Surplus</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1,07,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Current liabilities</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a Trade Payables</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2,80,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b Bank overdraft</td>
<td></td>
<td>6,00,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>14,75,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Assets</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Non-current assets</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a Property, Plant and Equipment</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tangible assets</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Intangible assets</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Current assets</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a Inventories</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>1,83,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b Trade receivables</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>1,94,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>14,75,000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes to Accounts**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1 Share Capital</th>
<th></th>
<th>₹</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Equity share capital</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4,880 Equity shares of ₹ 100 each (Shares have been issued for consideration other than cash)</td>
<td></td>
<td>4,88,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>4,88,000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*In the absence of the particulars of assets and liabilities (other than those of A Ltd.), the complete Balance Sheet of B Ltd. after takeover cannot be prepared.*
2. Reserves and Surplus (an extract)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Securities Premium</th>
<th>1,22,000</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Profit and loss account</td>
<td>......</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Less: Unrealised profit</td>
<td>(15,000)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total</strong></td>
<td><strong>1,07,000</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Trade payables

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Opening balance</th>
<th>3,20,000</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Less: Inter-company transaction cancelled upon amalgamation</td>
<td>(40,000)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total</strong></td>
<td><strong>2,80,000</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Tangible assets

| Buildings | 3,06,000 |
| Machinery | 5,76,000 |
| **Total** | **8,82,000** |

5. Intangible assets

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Goodwill</th>
<th>2,16,000</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

6. Inventories

| Opening balance | 1,98,000 |
| Less: Cancellation of profit upon amalgamation | (15,000) |
| **Total** | **1,83,000** |

7. Trade receivables

| Opening balance | 2,34,000 |
| Less: Intercompany transaction cancelled upon amalgamation | (40,000) |
| **Total** | **1,94,000** |

**Working Notes:**

1. Valuation of Goodwill

   - Average profit: 1,24,400
   - Less: 8% of ₹ 8,80,000: (70,400)
   - Super profit: 54,000
   - Value of Goodwill = 54,000 x 4: 2,16,000

2. Net Assets for purchase consideration

   - Goodwill as valued in W.N.1: 2,16,000
   - Building: 3,06,000
   - Machinery: 5,76,000
Inventory
Trade receivables (2,60,000-26,000)
Total Assets
Less: Trade payables
Net Assets

Out of this ₹ 6,00,000 is to be paid in cash and remaining i.e., (12,10,000 – 6,00,000) ₹ 6,10,000 in shares of ₹ 125. Thus, the number of shares to be allotted 6,10,000/125 = 4,880 shares.

3. Unrealised Profit on Inventory
The Inventory of A Ltd. includes goods worth ₹ 1,00,000 which was sold by B Ltd. on profit. Unrealized profit on this Inventory will be 40,000 x 1,00,000
1,60,000

As B Ltd purchased assets of A Ltd. at a price 10% less than the book value, 10% need to be adjusted from the Inventory i.e., 10% of ₹ 1,00,000.

Amount of unrealized profit

10. Journal Entries in the books of Platinum Ltd.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>₹</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bank A/c (1,00,000 x ₹ 10)</td>
<td>10,00,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To Equity share capital A/c</td>
<td>10,00,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Being money on final call received)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Equity share capital (₹ 50) A/c</td>
<td>75,00,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To Equity share capital (₹ 40) A/c</td>
<td>60,00,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To Capital Reduction A/c</td>
<td>15,00,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Being conversion of equity share capital of ₹ 50 each into ₹ 40 each as per reconstruction scheme)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bank A/c</td>
<td>12,50,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To Equity Share Capital A/c</td>
<td>12,50,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Being new shares allotted at ₹ 40 each)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trade payables A/c</td>
<td>12,40,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To Equity share capital A/c</td>
<td>7,50,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To Bank A/c (4,90,000 x 70%)</td>
<td>3,43,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Debit Amount</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To Capital Reduction A/c (Being payment made to trade payables in shares or cash to the extent of 70% as per reconstruction scheme)</td>
<td>1,47,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8% Debentures A/c Dr.</td>
<td>3,00,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12% Debentures A/c Dr.</td>
<td>4,00,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To Shiv A/c (Being cancellation of 8% and 12% debentures of Shiv)</td>
<td>7,00,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bank A/c Dr.</td>
<td>1,00,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To Shiv A/c (Being new debentures subscribed by Shiv)</td>
<td>1,00,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shiv A/c Dr.</td>
<td>8,00,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To 15% Debentures A/c</td>
<td>6,00,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To Capital Reduction A/c</td>
<td>2,00,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To 15% Debentures A/c</td>
<td>3,00,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Being cancellation of 8% and 12% debentures of Ganesh)</td>
<td>3,00,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ganesh A/c Dr.</td>
<td>3,00,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To 15% Debentures A/c</td>
<td>2,50,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To Capital Reduction A/c</td>
<td>50,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Land and Building (51,84,000 – 42,70,000)</td>
<td>9,14,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inventories Dr.</td>
<td>30,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To Capital Reduction A/c</td>
<td>9,44,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Outstanding expenses A/c Dr.</td>
<td>10,60,000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
To Bank A/c
(Being outstanding expenses paid in cash)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Account</th>
<th>Credit</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Capital Reduction A/c</td>
<td>Dr. 33,41,000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To Machinery A/c</td>
<td>1,30,000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To Computers A/c</td>
<td>1,20,000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To Trade receivables A/c</td>
<td>1,09,000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To Goodwill A/c</td>
<td>22,00,000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To Profit and Loss A/c</td>
<td>7,82,000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Being amount of Capital Reduction utilized in writing off P & L A/c (Dr.) balance, goodwill and downfall in value of other assets)

To Capital Reserve A/c
(Being debit balance of capital reduction account adjusted against capital reserve)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Account</th>
<th>Credit</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Capital Reserve A/c</td>
<td>Dr. 5,00,000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To Capital Reduction A/c</td>
<td>5,00,000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Balance Sheet (as reduced) as on 31.3.2019

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Particulars</th>
<th>Notes</th>
<th>₹</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Equity and Liabilities</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Shareholders' funds</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a Share capital</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>80,00,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Non-current liabilities</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a Long-term borrowings</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>8,50,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>88,50,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Assets</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Non-current assets</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a Property, Plant and Equipment</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tangible assets</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>63,04,000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2. Current assets
   a. Inventories 3,50,000
   b. Trade receivables 9,81,000
   c. Cash and cash equivalents 12,15,000
   Total 88,50,000

Notes to accounts

1. Share Capital
   2,00,000 Equity shares of ₹ 40 80,00,000

2. Long-term borrowings
   Secured
   15% Debentures (assumed to be secured) 8,50,000

3. Tangible assets
   Land & Building 51,84,000
   Machinery 7,20,000
   Computers 4,00,000
   Total 63,04,000

Working Notes:

1. Cash at Bank Account

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Particulars</th>
<th>₹</th>
<th>Particulars</th>
<th>₹</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>To Balance b/d</td>
<td>2,68,000</td>
<td>By Trade Creditors A/c</td>
<td>3,43,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To Equity Share capital A/c</td>
<td>10,00,000</td>
<td>By Outstanding expenses A/c</td>
<td>10,60,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To Equity Share Capital A/c</td>
<td>12,50,000</td>
<td>By Balance c/d (bal. fig.)</td>
<td>12,15,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To Shiv A/c</td>
<td>1,00,000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>26,18,000</td>
<td></td>
<td>26,18,000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Capital Reduction Account

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Particulars</th>
<th>₹</th>
<th>Particulars</th>
<th>₹</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>To Machinery A/c</td>
<td>1,30,000</td>
<td>By Equity Share Capital A/c</td>
<td>15,00,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To Computers A/c</td>
<td>1,20,000</td>
<td>By Trade Creditors A/c</td>
<td>1,47,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To Trade receivables A/c</td>
<td>1,09,000</td>
<td>By Shiv A/c</td>
<td>2,00,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To Goodwill A/c</td>
<td>22,00,000</td>
<td>By Ganesh A/c</td>
<td>50,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To Profit and Loss A/c</td>
<td>7,82,000</td>
<td>By Land &amp; Building</td>
<td>9,14,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>By Inventories</td>
<td>30,000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
11. **OM Ltd.**

Liquidator’s Final Statement of Account

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Receipts</th>
<th>Value Realised</th>
<th>Payments</th>
<th>Payments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Assets Realised:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cash at Bank</td>
<td>2,40,000</td>
<td></td>
<td>1,02,224</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trade receivables</td>
<td>8,00,000</td>
<td></td>
<td>1,17,736</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inventory</td>
<td>6,40,000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plant and Machinery</td>
<td>20,00,000</td>
<td>14% Debentures</td>
<td>9,20,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Patent</td>
<td>2,00,000</td>
<td>Interest Accrued (W.N. 2)</td>
<td>1,61,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Surplus from Securities</td>
<td>(W.N. 3)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5,20,000</td>
<td>Preferential</td>
<td>1,20,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Unsecured</td>
<td>3,51,200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Preference Shareholders:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Preference Share Capital</td>
<td>16,00,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Arrears of Dividend</td>
<td>2,24,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Equity Shareholders</td>
<td>(W.N.4) :</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>₹25.12 per share on</td>
<td>8,03,840</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>32,000 shares</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total</strong></td>
<td>44,00,000</td>
<td></td>
<td>1,02,224</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Working Notes:**

1. Liquidator’s remuneration:
   - 2% on assets realised (2% of ₹47,60,000) | 95,200
   - 2% on payments to unsecured creditors (2% on ₹3,51,200) | 7,024

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>₹</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>95,200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7,024</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1,02,224</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2. Interest accrued on 14% Debentures:
   - Interest accrued as on 31.3.2019: 1,28,800
   - Interest accrued upto the date of payment i.e. 30.6.2019: 32,200
   - Total: 1,61,000

3. Surplus from Securities:
   - Amount realised from Land and Buildings: 11,20,000
     - (₹ 3,20,000 + ₹ 8,00,000)
   - Less: Mortgage Loan: 6,00,000
   - Net: 5,20,000

4. Amount payable to Equity Shareholders:
   - Equity share capital (paid up): 19,20,000
   - Less: Amount available for equity shareholders: 8,03,840
   - Loss to be borne by equity shareholders: 11,16,160
   - Loss per equity share (₹11,16,160/32,000): 34.88
   - Amount payable to equity shareholders for each equity share (60-34.88): 25.12

12. FORM B– RA

Name of the Insurer: Xeta Insurance Company Limited

Registration No. and Date of registration with IRDA: .........................

Revenue Account for the year ended 31st March, 2019

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Particulars</th>
<th>Schedule</th>
<th>Amount (₹)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Premium earned (net)</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>26,67,500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Profit on sale of investment</td>
<td></td>
<td>30,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Others</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interest and dividend (gross)</td>
<td></td>
<td>1,50,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total (A)</td>
<td></td>
<td>28,47,500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Claims incurred (Net)</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>20,25,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Commission</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3,50,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operating expenses related to insurance</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>7,50,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total (B)</td>
<td></td>
<td>31,25,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operating loss from insurance business (A) – (B)</td>
<td></td>
<td>2,77,500</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Schedule –1 Premium earned (net)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>₹</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Premium received</td>
<td>33,60,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Less: Premium on reinsurance ceded</td>
<td>(2,25,000)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Net Premium</td>
<td>31,35,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Less: Adjustment for change in Reserve for Unexpired risk (as per W.N.)</td>
<td>(4,67,500)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total premium earned</td>
<td>26,67,500</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Schedule -2 Claims incurred (net)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>₹</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Claims paid</td>
<td>19,20,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Add: Expenses regarding claims</td>
<td>90,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Less: Re-insurance recoveries</td>
<td>(60,000)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Add: Claims outstanding as on 31st March, 2019</td>
<td>2,70,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Less: Claims outstanding as on 31st March, 2018</td>
<td>(1,95,000)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total claims incurred</td>
<td>20,25,000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Schedule -3 Commission

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>₹</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Commission paid</td>
<td>3,50,000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Schedule-4 Operating expenses related to Insurance Business

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>₹</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Expenses of management (8,40,000 - 90,000)</td>
<td>7,50,000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Working Note:

Calculation for change in Reserve for Unexpired risk:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>₹</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Reserve for Unexpired Risk as on 31st March, 2019 (50% of 31,35,000)</td>
<td>15,67,500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Additional Reserve as on 31st March, 2019</td>
<td>7,00,000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Less: Reserve for Unexpired Risk as on 31st March, 2018 15,00,000
  Additional Reserve as on 31st March, 2018 3,00,000 (18,00,000)
  
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Less: Reserve for Unexpired Risk as on 31st March, 2018</th>
<th>15,00,000</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Additional Reserve as on 31st March, 2018</td>
<td>3,00,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(18,00,000)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4,67,500</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

13. The amount of rebate on bills discounted as on 31st March, 2019 the period which has not been expired upto that day will be calculated as follows:

| Discount on ₹5,60,000 for 62 days @ 10%   | 9,512 |
| Discount on ₹17,44,000 for 69 days @ 10% | 32,969|
| Discount on ₹11,28,000 for 82 days @ 10% | 25,341|
| Discount on ₹16,24,000 for 92 days @ 10% | 40,934|
| Discount on ₹12,00,000 for 96 days @ 10% | 31,562|
| Total                                       | 1,40,318|

Note: The due date of the bills discounted is included in the number of days above.

The amount of discount to be credited to the profit and loss account will be:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>₹</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Transfer from rebate on bills discounted as on 31.03.2018</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Add: Discount received during the year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Less: Rebate on bills discounted as on 31.03.2019 (as above)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Journal Entries

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>₹</th>
<th>₹</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rebate on bills discounted A/c Dr. 1,36,518</td>
<td>1,36,518</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T o Discount on bills A/c</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Transfer of opening unexpired discount on 31.03. 2018)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Discount on bills A/c Dr. 1,40,318</td>
<td>1,40,318</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T o Rebate on bills discounted A/c</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Unexpired discount on 31.03.2019 taken into account)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Discount on Bills A/c Dr. 3,36,512</td>
<td>3,36,512</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T o P &amp; L A/c</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Discount earned in the year, transferred to P&amp;L A/c)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Department Trading and Profit and Loss Account

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Particulars</th>
<th>Sawmill</th>
<th>Furniture</th>
<th>Particulars</th>
<th>Sawmill</th>
<th>Furniture</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>To Opening stock</td>
<td>1,50,000</td>
<td>25,000</td>
<td>By Sales</td>
<td>12,00,000</td>
<td>2,00,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To Purchase</td>
<td>10,00,000</td>
<td>7,500</td>
<td>By Transfer to furniture dept</td>
<td>1,50,000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To Wages</td>
<td>30,000</td>
<td>10,000</td>
<td>By Closing stock</td>
<td>1,00,000</td>
<td>30,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To Transfer from saw mill</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1,50,000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To Gross profit</td>
<td>2,70,000</td>
<td>37,500</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>14,50,000</td>
<td>2,30,000</td>
<td></td>
<td>14,50,000</td>
<td>2,30,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To Selling expenses</td>
<td>10,000</td>
<td>3,000</td>
<td>By Gross profit</td>
<td>2,70,000</td>
<td>37,500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To Net Profit</td>
<td>2,60,000</td>
<td>34,500</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2,70,000</td>
<td>37,500</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### General Profit & Loss Account

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Particulars</th>
<th>Amount</th>
<th>Particulars</th>
<th>Amount</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>To general Expenses</td>
<td>55,000</td>
<td>By Net Profit from Saw Mill</td>
<td>2,60,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To stock reserve (WN2)</td>
<td>4,500</td>
<td>Saw Mill</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To Net Profit</td>
<td>2,37,813</td>
<td>Furniture</td>
<td>34,500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>By stock reserve (opening WN-1)</td>
<td>2,813</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2,97,313</td>
<td></td>
<td>2,97,313</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Working Notes

1. Calculation of Stock Reserve (opening)
   
   \[25,000 \times 75\% \text{ wood} \times 15\% = ₹ 2,813\]

2. Calculation of closing stock reserve
   
   Gross profit Rate of Saw Mill of 2018
   
   \[\frac{2,70,000}{(12,00,000 + 1,50,000)} \times 100 = 20\%\]
   
   \[30,000 \times 75\% \times 20\% = ₹ 4,500\]

### Pune Branch Account

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Particulars</th>
<th>₹</th>
<th>Particulars</th>
<th>₹</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>To Opening Balance</td>
<td></td>
<td>By Opening Balance:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stock</td>
<td>10,000</td>
<td>Salaries outstanding</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Debtors 4,000  By Remittances:
Petty Cash 500  Cash sales 1,30,000
Furniture 2,000  Cash received from debtors 35,000
Prepaid Insurance 150  Cash paid by debtors directly to H.O. 2,000
To Goods sent to Branch Account 80,000  Received from Insurance Company 1,000 1,68,000
To Bank (expenses) Rent 2,000  By Goods sent to branch (return of goods by the branch to H.O.) 1,000
Salaries 2,400
Petty Cash 1,000  By Closing Balances:
Insurance 600  Stock 5,000
To Net Profit 78,950  Petty Cash 650
Debtors 4,900
Furniture (2,000 – 10% depreciation) 1,800
Prepaid insurance (1/4 x ₹ 600) 150

1,81,600

Working Note:

Calculation of petty cash balance at the end:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Particulars</th>
<th>Financial Capital Maintenance at Historical Cost (₹)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Closing equity (₹ 30 x 1,20,000 units)</td>
<td>36,00,000 represented by cash</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 17. (a)

Para 8.3 of AS 4 “Contingencies and Events Occurring after the Balance Sheet Date”, states that adjustments to assets and liabilities are not appropriate for events occurring after the balance sheet date, if such events do not relate to conditions existing at the balance sheet date. The destruction of warehouse due to earthquake did not exist on the balance sheet date i.e. 31.3.2019. Therefore, loss occurred due to earthquake is not to be recognised in the financial year 2018-2019.

However, according to para 8.6 of the standard, unusual changes affecting the existence or substratum of the enterprise after the balance sheet date may indicate a need to consider the use of fundamental accounting assumption of going concern in the preparation of the financial statements. As per the information given in the question, the earthquake has caused major destruction; therefore fundamental accounting assumption of going concern is called upon.

Hence, the fact of earthquake together with an estimated loss of ₹ 25 lakhs should be disclosed in the Report of the Directors for the financial year 2018-2019.

### 17. (b)

(i) In the given case, Mobile limited created 2% provision for doubtful debts till 31st March, 2018. Subsequently in 2018-19, the company revised the estimates based on the changed circumstances and wants to create 3% provision. Thus change in rate of provision of doubtful debt is change in estimate and is not change in accounting policy. This change will affect only current year.

(ii) As per AS 5, the adoption of an accounting policy for events or transactions that differ in substance from previously occurring events or transactions, will not be considered as a change in accounting policy. Introduction of a formal retirement gratuity scheme by an employer in place of ad hoc ex-gratia payments to employees on retirement is a transaction which is substantially different from the previous policy, will not be treated as change in an accounting policy.

(iii) Change in useful life of furniture from 5 years to 3 years is a change in estimate and is not a change in accounting policy.

(iv) Adoption of a new accounting policy for events or transactions which did not occur previously should not be treated as a change in an accounting policy. Hence the introduction of new pension scheme is not a change in accounting policy.

(v) Change in cost formula used in measurement of cost of inventories is a change in accounting policy.

### 18. (a)

(i) As per AS 11 “The Effects of Changes in Foreign Exchange Rates”, exchange differences arising on the settlement of monetary items or on reporting an enterprise’s monetary items at rates different from those at which they were initially recorded during the period, or reported in previous financial statements,
should be recognized as income or as expenses in the period in which they arise.

Accordingly, exchange difference on trade receivables amounting ₹ 23,076 (₹ 5,23,076 (US $ 8,547 x ₹ 61.20) less ₹ 5,00,000) should be charged to profit & Loss account.

(ii) Calculation of profit or loss to be recognized in the books of Power Track Limited

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>₹</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Forward contract rate</td>
<td>64.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Less: Spot rate</td>
<td>(61.50)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loss on forward contract</td>
<td>2.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forward Contract Amount</td>
<td>$ 50,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total loss on entering into forward contract = ($ 50,000 x ₹ 2.75)</td>
<td>₹1,37,500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contract period</td>
<td>6 months</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loss for the period 1st November, 2018 to 31st March, 2019 i.e. 5 months falling in the year 2018-2019</td>
<td>5 months</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hence, Loss for 5 months will be ₹ 1,37,500 x 5/6 =</td>
<td>₹ 1,14,583</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Thus, the loss amounting to ₹ 1,14,583 for the period is to be recognized in the year ended 31st March, 2019.

(b) As per AS 12 “Accounting for Government Grants”, where the government grants are in the nature of promoters’ contribution, i.e., they are given with reference to the total investment in an undertaking or by way of contribution towards its total capital outlay (for example, Central Investment Subsidy Scheme) and no repayment is ordinarily expected in respect thereof, the grants are treated as capital reserve which can be neither distributed as dividend nor considered as deferred income.

The subsidy received by Samrat Ltd. for setting up its business in a designated backward area will be treated as grant by the government in the nature of promoter’s contribution as the grant is given with reference to the total investment in an undertaking i.e. subsidy is 25% of the eligible investment and also no repayment is apparently expected in respect thereof.

Since the subsidy received is neither in relation to specific fixed assets nor in relation to revenue. Thus, the company cannot recognize the said subsidy as income in its

*US $ 8,547 = 5,00,000/58.50
financial statements in the given case. It should be recognized as capital reserve which can be neither distributed as dividend nor considered as deferred income.

19. (a) Para 10 of AS 16 ‘Borrowing Costs’ states “To the extent that funds are borrowed specifically for the purpose of obtaining a qualifying asset, the amount of borrowing costs eligible for capitalisation on that asset should be determined as the actual borrowing costs incurred on that borrowing during the period less any income on the temporary investment of those borrowings.” The capitalisation rate should be the weighted average of the borrowing costs applicable to the borrowings of the enterprise that are outstanding during the period, other than borrowings made specifically for the purpose of obtaining a qualifying asset. Hence, in the above case, treatment of accountant of Rainbow Ltd. is incorrect. The amount of borrowing costs capitalized for the financial year 2018-2019 should be calculated as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>₹ in crores</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Actual interest for 2018-2019 (11% of ₹ 150 crores)</td>
<td>16.50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Less: Income on temporary investment from specific borrowings</td>
<td>(3.50)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Borrowing costs to be capitalized during year 2018-2019</td>
<td>13.00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(b) As per AS 19 ‘leases’, a lease will be classified as finance lease if at the inception of the lease, the present value of minimum lease payment* amounts to at least substantially all of the fair value of leased asset. In the given case, the implicit rate of interest is given at 15%. The present value of minimum lease payments at 15% using PV- Annuity Factor can be computed as:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>₹</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Annuity Factor (Year 1 to Year 3)</td>
<td>3.36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present Value of minimum lease payments (₹3 lakhs each year)</td>
<td>₹10.08 lakhs (approx.)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Thus present value of minimum lease payments is ₹10.08 lakhs and the fair value of the machine is ₹ 30 lakhs. In a finance lease, lease term should be for the major part of the economic life of the asset even if title is not transferred. However, in the given case, the effective useful life of the machine is 14 years while the lease is only for three years. Therefore, lease agreement is an operating lease. Lease payments under an operating lease should be recognized as an expense in the statement of profit and loss on a straight line basis over the lease term unless another systematic basis is more representative of the time pattern of the user's benefit.

* In calculating the present value of the of minimum lease payments, the discount rate is the interest rate implicit in the lease.
20. (a) As per para 41 of AS 26 “Intangible Assets”, expenditure on research should be recognized as an expense when it is incurred. An intangible asset arising from development (or from the development phase of an internal project) should be recognized if, and only if, an enterprise can demonstrate all of the conditions specified in para 44 of the standard. An intangible asset (arising from development) should be derecognised when no future economic benefits are expected from its use according to para 87 of the standard. Thus, the manager cannot defer the expenditure write off to future years in the given case.

Hence, the expenses amounting ₹ 40 lakhs incurred on the research and development project has to be written off in the current year ending 31st March, 2019.

(b) As per para 46 of AS 29 "Provisions, Contingent Liabilities and Contingent Assets", where some or all of the expenditure required to settle a provision is expected to be reimbursed by another party, the reimbursement should be recognised when, and only when, it is virtually certain that reimbursement will be received if the enterprise settles the obligation. The reimbursement should be treated as a separate asset. The amount recognised for the reimbursement should not exceed the amount of the provision.

It is apparent from the question that the company had not made provision for warranty in respect of certain goods considering that the company can claim the warranty cost from the original supplier. However, the provision for warranty should have been made as per AS 29 and the amount claimable as reimbursement should be treated as a separate asset in the financial statements of the company rather than omitting the disclosure of such liability. Accordingly, it is viewed that the accounting treatment adopted by the company with respect to warranty is not correct.
The provisions relating to eligibility, qualifications and disqualifications of an auditor are governed by section 141 of the Companies Act, 2013 (hereinafter referred as the Act). The main provisions are stated below:

(1) A person shall be eligible for appointment as an auditor of a company only if he is a chartered accountant.

It may be noted that a firm whereof majority of partners practising in India are qualified for appointment as aforesaid may be appointed by its firm name to be auditor of a company.

Fig.: Is the person eligible for appointment as auditor? ¹

(2) Where a firm including a limited liability partnership is appointed as an auditor of a company, only the partners who are chartered accountants shall be authorised to act and sign on behalf of the firm.

(3) Under sub-section (3) of section 141 along with Rule 10 of the Companies (Audit and Auditors) Rules, 2014 (hereinafter referred as CAAR), the following persons shall not be eligible for appointment as an auditor of a company, namely-

(a) a body corporate other than a limited liability partnership registered under the Limited Liability Partnership Act, 2008;

(b) an officer or employee of the company;

(c) a person who is a partner, or who is in the employment, of an officer or employee of the company;

(d) a person who, or his relative or partner -

(i) is holding any security of or interest in the company or its subsidiary, or of its holding or associate company or a subsidiary of such holding company;

¹ Source of image: http://yourfinancebook.com
It may be noted that the relative may hold security or interest in the company of face value not exceeding ₹ 1,00,000.

It may also be noted that the condition of ₹ 1,00,000 shall, wherever relevant, be also applicable in the case of a company not having share capital or other securities.

Students may also note that in the event of acquiring any security or interest by a relative, above the threshold prescribed, the corrective action to maintain the limits as specified above shall be taken by the auditor within 60 days of such acquisition or interest.

The following points merit consideration in this regard:

(i) The value of shares of ₹ 1,00,000 that can be held by a relative is the face value not the market value.

(ii) The limit of ₹ 1,00,000 would be applicable where the securities are held by the relative of an auditor and not where the securities are held by an auditor himself or his partner. In case of an auditor or his partner, securities of even small value shall be a disqualification.

(iii) Grace period of 60 days for corrective action shall apply only in respect of securities held by relatives. This would not apply to an auditor or his partner.

[The term “relative”, as defined under the Companies Act, 2013, means anyone who is related to another as members of a Hindu Undivided Family; husband and wife; Father (including step-father), Mother (including step-mother), Son (including step-son), Son’s wife, Daughter, Daughter’s husband, Brother (including step-brother), Sister (including step-sister).]

**EXAMPLES**

**Ex 1:** Mr. A, a practicing Chartered Accountant, is holding securities of XYZ Ltd. having face value of ₹ 900. Whether Mr. A is qualified for appointment as an auditor of XYZ Ltd.?

As per section 141(3)(d)(i), an auditor is disqualified to be appointed as an auditor if he, or his relative or partner holding any security of or interest in the company or its subsidiary, or of its holding or associate company or a subsidiary of such holding company.

In the present case, Mr. A is holding security of ₹ 900 in XYZ Ltd. Therefore, he is not eligible for appointment as an auditor of XYZ Ltd.

**Ex 2:** Mr. P is a practicing Chartered Accountant and Mr. Q, the relative of Mr. P, is holding securities of ABC Ltd. having face value of ₹ 90,000. Whether Mr. P is qualified from being appointed as an auditor of ABC Ltd.?

As per section 141(3)(d)(i), a person is disqualified to be appointed as an auditor if he, or his relative or partner is holding any security of or interest in
the company or its subsidiary, or of its holding or associate company or a subsidiary of such holding company. Further, as per proviso to this section, the relative of the person may hold the securities or interest in the company of face value not exceeding of ₹1,00,000.

In the present case, Mr. Q. (relative of Mr. P), is having securities of ₹90,000 face value in ABC Ltd., which is as per requirement of proviso to section 141(3)(d)(i). Therefore, Mr. P will not be disqualified to be appointed as an auditor of ABC Ltd.

**Ex 3:** M/s BC & Co. is an Audit Firm having partners Mr. B and Mr. C, and Mr. A the relative of Mr. C, is holding securities of MWF Ltd. having face value of ₹1,01,000. Whether M/s BC & Co. is qualified from being appointed as an auditor of MWF Ltd.?

As per section 141(3)(d)(i), a person is disqualified to be appointed as an auditor if he, or his relative or partner is holding any security of or interest in the company or its subsidiary, or of its holding or associate company or a subsidiary of such holding company. Further as per proviso to this section, the relative of the person may hold the securities or interest in the company of face value not exceeding of ₹1,00,000.

In the instant case, M/s BC & Co. will be disqualified for appointment as an auditor of MWF Ltd. as the relative of Mr. C (i.e. partner of M/s BC & Co.) is holding the securities in MWF Ltd. which is exceeding the limit mentioned in proviso to section 141(3)(d)(i).

**Ex 4:** M/s RM & Co. is an audit firm having partners CA. R and CA. M. The firm has been offered the appointment as an auditor of Enn Ltd. for the Financial Year 2016-17. Mr. Bee, the relative of CA. R, is holding 5,000 shares (face value of ₹10 each) in Enn Ltd. having market value of ₹1,50,000. Whether M/s RM & Co. is disqualified to be appointed as auditors of Enn Ltd.?

As per section 141(3)(d)(i), a person shall not be eligible for appointment as an auditor of a company, who, or his relative or partner is holding any security of or interest in the company or its subsidiary, or of its holding or associate company or a subsidiary of such holding company. However, as per proviso to this section, the relative of the person may hold the securities or interest in the company of face value not exceeding of ₹1,00,000.

In the instant case, M/s RM & Co. is an audit firm having partners CA. R and CA. M. Mr. Bee is a relative of CA. R and he is holding shares of Enn Ltd. of face value of ₹50,000 only (5,000 shares x ₹10 per share).

Therefore, M/s RM & Co. is not disqualified for appointment as an auditors of Enn Ltd. as the relative of CA. R (i.e. partner of M/s RM & Co.) is holding the securities in Enn Ltd. which is within the limit mentioned in proviso to section 141(3)(d)(i) of the Companies Act, 2013.
(ii) is indebted to the company, or its subsidiary, or its holding or associate company or a subsidiary of such holding company, in excess of ₹ 5,00,000; or

(iii) has given a guarantee or provided any security in connection with the indebtedness of any third person to the Company or its Subsidiary, or its Holding or Associate Company or a Subsidiary of such Holding Company, in excess of ₹ 1,00,000.

(e) a person or a firm who, whether directly or indirectly has business relationship with the Company, or its Subsidiary, or its Holding or Associate Company or Subsidiary of such holding company or associate company, of such nature as may be prescribed;

Students may note that for the purpose of clause (e) above, the term “business relationship” shall be construed as any transaction entered into for a commercial purpose, except –

(i) commercial transactions which are in the nature of professional services permitted to be rendered by an auditor or audit firm under the Act and the Chartered Accountants Act, 1949 and the rules or the regulations made under those Acts;

(ii) commercial transactions which are in the ordinary course of business of the company at arm’s length price - like sale of products or services to the auditor, as customer, in the ordinary course of business, by companies engaged in the business of telecommunications, airlines, hospitals, hotels and such other similar businesses.

(f) a person whose relative is a Director or is in the employment of the Company as a director or key Managerial Personnel.

(g) a person who is in full time employment elsewhere or a person or a partner of a firm holding appointment as its auditor, if such person or partner is at the date of such appointment or reappointment holding appointment as auditor of more than twenty companies other than one person companies, dormant companies, small companies and private companies having paid-up share capital less than ₹ 100 crore.

(h) a person who has been convicted by a Court of an offence involving fraud and a period of ten years has not elapsed from the date of such conviction.

(i) a person who, directly or indirectly, renders any service referred to in section 144 to the company or its holding company or its subsidiary company.

It may be noted that, for the purposes of this clause, the term "directly or indirectly" shall have the same meaning as assigned to it in the Explanation to section 144, i.e.

In case of auditor being an individual, either himself or through his relative or any other person connected or associated with such individual or through any other entity, whatsoever, in which such individual has significant influence or control, or whose name or trade mark or brand is used by such individual, shall be termed as rendering of services directly or indirectly by the auditor; and
In case of auditor being a firm, either itself or through any of its partners or through its parent, subsidiary or associate entity or through any other entity, whatsoever, in which the firm or any partner of the firm has significant influence or control, or whose name or trade mark or brand is used by the firm or any of its partners, shall be termed as rendering of services directly or indirectly by the auditor.

Section 144 of the Companies Act, 2013 prescribes certain services not to be rendered by the auditor. An auditor appointed under this Act shall provide to the company only such other services as are approved by the Board of Directors or the audit committee, as the case may be, but which shall not include any of the following services (whether such services are rendered directly or indirectly to the company or its holding company or subsidiary company), namely:

(i) accounting and book keeping services;
(ii) internal audit;
(iii) design and implementation of any financial information system;
(iv) actuarial services;
(v) investment advisory services;
(vi) investment banking services;
(vii) rendering of outsourced financial services;
(viii) management services; and
(ix) any other kind of services as may be prescribed.

It may be noted that an auditor or audit firm who or which has been performing any non-audit services on or before the commencement of this Act shall comply with the provisions of this section before the closure of the first financial year after the date of such commencement.

Example: CA. Poshin is providing the services of investment banking to C Ltd. Later on, he was also offered to be appointed as an auditor of the company for the current financial year. Advise.

Section 141(3)(i) of the Companies Act, 2013 disqualifies a person for appointment as an auditor of a company who, directly or indirectly, renders any service referred to in section 144 to the company or its holding company or its subsidiary company. Section 144 of the Companies Act, 2013 prescribes certain...

2 Source of image: webuildbuzz.com
services not to be rendered by the auditor which includes investment banking services.

Therefore, CA. Poshin is advised not to accept the assignment of auditing as the investment banking service is specifically notified in the list of services not to be rendered by him as per section 141(3)(i) read with section 144 of the Companies Act, 2013.

(4) Where a person appointed as an auditor of a company incurs any of the disqualifications mentioned in sub-section (3) after his appointment, he shall vacate his office as such auditor and such vacation shall be deemed to be a casual vacancy in the office of the auditor.

CASE STUDY

Facts of the Case: Mr. A, a chartered accountant, has been appointed as an auditor of Laxman Ltd. in the Annual General Meeting of the company held in September, 2016, which assignment he accepted. Subsequently in January, 2017 he joined Mr. B, another chartered accountant, who is the Manager Finance of Laxman Ltd., as partner.

Provisions and Explanation: Section 141(3)(c) of the Companies Act, 2013 prescribes that any person who is a partner or in employment of an officer or employee of the company will be disqualified to act as an auditor of a company. Sub-section (4) of Section 141 provides that an auditor who becomes subject, after his appointment, to any of the disqualifications specified in sub-sections (3) of Section 141, he shall be deemed to have vacated his office as an auditor.

Conclusion: In the present case, Mr. A, an auditor of Laxman Ltd., joined as partner with Mr. B, who is Manager Finance of Laxman Limited. The given situation has attracted sub-section (3)(c) of Section 141 and, therefore, he shall be deemed to have vacated office of the auditor of Laxman Limited in accordance with sub-section (4) of section 141.

2. Appointment of Auditor

Section 139 of the Companies Act, 2013 contains provisions regarding Appointment of Auditors. Discussion on appointment of auditors may be grouped under two broad headings-

I Appointment of First Auditors.

II Appointment of Subsequent Auditors.

Fig: Meeting for appointment of Auditor³

³ Source of image: http://newhavenscience.org
2.1 Appointment of First Auditor

2.1.1 Appointment of First Auditors in the case of a company, other than a Government Company: As per Section 139(6), the first auditor of a company, other than a Government company, shall be appointed by the Board of Directors within 30 days from the date of registration of the company.

In the case of failure of the Board to appoint the auditor, it shall inform the members of the company.

The members of the company shall within 90 days at an extraordinary general meeting appoint the auditor. Appointed auditor shall hold office till the conclusion of the first annual general meeting.
CASE STUDY

Facts of the Case: Managing Director of Pigeon Ltd. himself wants to appoint CA. Champ, a practicing Chartered Accountant, as first auditor of the company.

Provisions and Explanation: Section 139(6) of the Companies Act, 2013 lays down that the first auditor of a company shall be appointed by the Board of Directors within 30 days from the date of registration of the company. In the instant case, the proposed appointment of CA. Champ, a practicing Chartered Accountant, as first auditor by the Managing Director of Pigeon Ltd. by himself is in violation of Section 139(6) of the Companies Act, 2013, which authorizes the Board of Directors to appoint the first auditor of the company.

Conclusion: In view of the above, the Managing Director of Pigeon Ltd. should be advised not to appoint the first auditor of the company.

2.1.2 Appointment of First Auditors in the case of Government Company:

A “Government company” is a company in which not less than 51% of the paid-up share capital is held by the Central Government or by any State Government or Governments or partly by the Central Government and partly by one or more State Governments, and includes a company which is a subsidiary company of such a Government company.

Section 139(7) provides that in the case of a Government company or any other company owned or controlled, directly or indirectly, by the Central Government, or by any State Government, or Governments, or partly by the Central Government and partly by one or more State Governments, the first auditor shall be appointed by the Comptroller and Auditor-General of India within 60 days from the date of registration of the company.

In case the Comptroller and Auditor-General of India does not appoint such auditor within the above said period, the Board of Directors of the company shall appoint such auditor within the next 30 days. Further, in the case of failure of the Board to appoint such auditor within next 30 days, it shall inform the members of the company who shall appoint such auditor within 60 days at an extraordinary general meeting. Auditors shall hold office till the conclusion of the first annual general meeting.

CASE STUDY

Facts of the Case: The first auditor of Bhartiya Petrol Ltd., a Government company, was appointed by the Board of Directors.

Provisions and Explanation: In the case of a Government Company, the appointment of first auditor is governed by the provisions of Section 139(7) of the Companies Act, 2013 which states that in the case of a Government company, the first auditor shall be appointed by the Comptroller and Auditor-General of India within 60 days from the date of registration of the company. Hence, in the case of Bhartiya Petrol Ltd., being a government company, the first auditor shall be appointed by the Comptroller and Auditor General of India.

Conclusion: Thus, the appointment of first auditor made by the Board of Directors of Bhartiya Petrol Ltd., is null and void.
2.2 Appointment of Subsequent Auditor/Reappointment of Auditor

2.2.1 Appointment of Subsequent Auditors in case of Non Government Companies: Section 139(1) of the Companies Act, 2013 provides that every company shall, at the first annual general meeting appoint an individual or a firm as an auditor who shall hold office from the conclusion of that meeting till the conclusion of its sixth annual general meeting and thereafter till the conclusion of every sixth meeting.

The following points need to be noted in this regard-

(i) Before such appointment is made, the written consent of the auditor to such appointment, and a certificate from him or it that the appointment, if made, shall be in accordance with the conditions as may be prescribed, shall be obtained from the auditor.

(ii) The certificate shall also indicate whether the auditor satisfies the criteria provided in section 141.

(iii) The company shall inform the auditor concerned of his or its appointment, and also file a notice of such appointment with the Registrar within 15 days of the meeting in which the auditor is appointed.

2.2.2 Appointment of Subsequent Auditors in case of Government Companies: As per section 139(5), in the case of a Government company or any other company owned or controlled, directly or indirectly, by the Central Government, or by any State Government or Governments, or partly by the Central Government and partly by one or more State Governments, the Comptroller and Auditor-General of India shall, in respect of a financial year, appoint an auditor duly qualified to be appointed as an auditor of companies under this Act, within a period of 180 days from the commencement of the financial year, who shall hold office till the conclusion of the annual general meeting.

2.3 Filling of a Casual Vacancy

As per Section 139(8), any casual vacancy in the office of an auditor shall-

(i) In the case of a company other than a company whose accounts are subject to audit by an auditor appointed by the Comptroller and Auditor-General of India, be filled by the Board of Directors within 30 days.

If such casual vacancy is as a result of the resignation of an auditor, such appointment shall also be approved by the company at a general meeting convened within three months of the recommendation of the Board and he shall hold the office till the conclusion of the next annual general meeting.

(ii) In the case of a company whose accounts are subject to audit by an auditor appointed by the Comptroller and Auditor-General of India, be filled by the Comptroller and Auditor-General of India within 30 days.
It may be noted that in case the Comptroller and Auditor-General of India does not fill the vacancy within the said period the Board of Directors shall fill the vacancy within next 30 days.

2.3.1 Casual Vacancy by Resignation: As per section 140(2) of the Act, the auditor who has resigned from the company shall file within a period of 30 days from the date of resignation, a statement in the prescribed Form ADT–3 (as per Rule 8 of CAAR) with the company and the Registrar.

In case of the companies referred to in section 139(5) i.e. Government company, the auditor shall also file such statement with the CAG along with the company and the Registrar.

The auditor shall indicate the reasons and other facts as may be relevant with regard to his resignation.

In case of failure, the auditor shall be liable to a penalty of fifty thousand rupees or the remuneration of the auditor, whichever is less, and in case of continuing failure, with further penalty of five hundred rupees for each day after the first during which such failure continues, subject to a maximum of five lakh rupees as per section 140(3) (Companies (Amendment) Second Ordinance 2019 dated 21 February 2019).

CASE STUDY

Facts of the Case: CA. Donald was appointed as the auditor of PS Ltd. at the remuneration of ₹30,000. However, after 4 months of continuing his services, he could not continue to hold his office of the auditor as his wife got a government job at a distant place and he needs to shift along with her to the new place. Thus, he resigned from the
company and did not perform his responsibilities relating to filing of statement to the company and the registrar indicating the reasons and other facts as may be relevant with regard to his resignation.

How much fine may he be punishable with under section 140(3) for non-compliance of section 140(2) of the Companies Act, 2013?

Provisions and Explanation: For non-compliance of sub-section (2) of section 140 of the Companies Act, 2013, the auditor shall be punishable with fine, which shall not be less than fifty thousand rupees or the remuneration of the auditor, whichever is less but which may extend to five lakh rupees, under section 140(3) of the said Act.

Conclusion: Thus, the fine under section 140(3) of the Companies Act, 2013 shall not be less than ₹30,000 but which may extend to ₹5,00,000.

Other Important Provisions Regarding Appointment of Auditors

(1) A retiring auditor may be re-appointed at an annual general meeting, if-
   (a) he is not disqualified for re-appointment;
   (b) he has not given the company a notice in writing of his unwillingness to be re-appointed; and
   (c) a special resolution has not been passed at that meeting appointing some other auditor or providing expressly that he shall not be re-appointed.

(2) Where at any annual general meeting, no auditor is appointed or re-appointed, the existing auditor shall continue to be the auditor of the company.

3. Rotation of Auditor

3.1 Applicability of Section 139(2) Rotation of Auditor: As per rules prescribed in Companies (Audit and Auditors) Rules, 2014, for applicability of section 139(2) the class of companies shall mean the following classes of companies excluding one person companies and small companies-

Fig: Rotation of Auditors

Source of image: thehindubusinessline.com
(I) all unlisted public companies having paid up share capital of rupees ten crore or more;

(II) all private limited companies having paid up share capital of rupees fifty crore or more;

(III) all companies having paid up share capital of below threshold limit mentioned above, but having public borrowings from financial institutions, banks or public deposits of rupees fifty crores or more.

**Example:** Rano Pvt. Ltd. is a private limited Company, having paid up share capital of ₹42 crore but having public borrowing from nationalized banks and financial institutions of ₹72 crore, manner of rotation of auditor will be applicable.

As per **section 139(2),** no listed company or a company belonging to such class or classes of companies as mentioned above, shall appoint or re-appoint-

(a) an individual as auditor for more than one term of five consecutive years; and

(b) an audit firm as auditor for more than two terms of five consecutive years. Provided that -

(i) an individual auditor who has completed his term under clause (a) shall not be eligible for re-appointment as auditor in the same company for five years from the completion of his term;

(ii) an audit firm which has completed its term under clause (b), shall not be eligible for re-appointment as auditor in the same company for five years from the completion of such term.

**Example:** Jolly Ltd., a listed company, appointed M/s Polly & Co., a Chartered Accountant firm, as the statutory auditor in its AGM held at the end of September, 2016 for 11 years. Here, the appointment of M/s Polly & Co. is not valid as the appointment can be made only for one term of five consecutive years and then another one more term of five consecutive years. It can’t be appointed for two terms in one AGM only. Further, a cooling period of five years from the completion of term is required i.e. the firm can’t be re-appointed for further 5 years after completion of two terms of five consecutive years.
The following points merit consideration in this regard:

(1) As on the date of appointment, no audit firm having a common partner or partners to the other audit firm, whose tenure has expired in a company immediately preceding the financial year, shall be appointed as auditor of the same company for a period of five years.

Example: M/s XYZ & Co., is an audit firm having partner Mrs. X, Mr. Y and Mr. Z, whose tenure has expired in the company immediately preceding the financial year. M/s ABZ & Co., another audit firm in which Mr. Z is a common partner, will also be disqualified for the same company along with M/S XYZ & Co. for the period of five years.

(2) Every company, existing on or before the commencement of this Act which is required to comply with provisions of this sub-section, shall comply with the requirements of this sub-section within a period which shall not be later than the date of the first annual general meeting of the company held, within the period specified under sub-section (1) of section 96, after three years from the date of commencement of this Act.

**EXAMPLES**

Ex 1: Mr. Raj, a Chartered Accountant, is an individual auditor of Binaca Limited for last 5 years as on March, 2013 (i.e. existing on or before the date of Commencement of Companies Act, 2013). Keeping in view the transition period as stated in the Companies Act, 2013, Mr. Raj can continue the audit of Binaca Ltd. up to the first annual general meeting to be held after three years from the date of commencement of the Act.

Ex 2: M/s Raj & Associates, a Chartered Accountants Audit Firm, is doing audit of Binaca Limited for last 11 years as on March, 2013 (i.e. existing on or before the date of Commencement of Companies Act, 2013). Keeping in view the transition period as stated in the Companies Act, 2013, M/s Raj Associates can continue the audit of Binaca Ltd. up to the first annual general meeting to be held after three years from the date of commencement of the Act.

Students may interlink the above example with Illustrative table explaining rotation in case of individual auditor as well as audit firm which has been given after the 3.2 i.e. Manner of rotation of Auditors by the Companies on Expiry of their Term.*

(3) It has also been provided that right of the company to remove an auditor or the right of the auditor to resign from such office of the company shall not be prejudiced.

(4) Subject to the provisions of this Act, members of a company may resolve to provide that-

(a) in the audit firm appointed by it, the auditing partner and his team shall be rotated at such intervals as may be resolved by members; or

(b) the audit shall be conducted by more than one auditor.

(5) The Central Government may, by rules, prescribe the manner in which the companies shall rotate their auditors.
3.2 Manner of Rotation of Auditors by the Companies on Expiry of their Term: Rule 6 of the Companies (Audit and Auditors) Rules, 2014 prescribes the manner of rotation of auditors on expiry of their term which is given below-

(1) The Audit Committee shall recommend to the Board, the name of an individual auditor or of an audit firm who may replace the incumbent auditor on expiry of the term of such incumbent.

(2) Where a company is required to constitute an Audit Committee, the Board shall consider the recommendation of such committee, and in other cases, the Board shall itself consider the matter of rotation of auditors and make its recommendation for appointment of the next auditor by the members in annual general meeting.

(3) For the purpose of the rotation of auditors-

(i) in case of an auditor (whether an individual or audit firm), the period for which the individual or the firm has held office as auditor prior to the commencement of the Act shall be taken into account for calculating the period of five consecutive years or ten consecutive years, as the case may be;

(ii) the incoming auditor or audit firm shall not be eligible if such auditor or audit firm is associated with the outgoing auditor or audit firm under the same network of audit firms.

Explanation I - For the purposes of these rules the term “same network” includes the firms operating or functioning, hitherto or in future, under the same brand name, trade name or common control.

Explanation II - For the purpose of rotation of auditors,

(a) a break in the term for a continuous period of five years shall be considered as fulfilling the requirement of rotation;

(b) if a partner, who is in charge of an audit firm and also certifies the financial statements of the company, retires from the said firm and joins another firm of chartered accountants, such other firm shall also be ineligible to be appointed for a period of five years.

*Illustration explaining rotation in case of individual auditor

<p>| Number of consecutive years for which an individual auditor has been functioning as auditor in the same company [in the first AGM held after the commencement of provisions of section 139(2)] | Maximum number of consecutive years for which he may be appointed in the same company (including transitional period) | Aggregate period which the auditor would complete in the same company in view of column I and II |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I</th>
<th>II</th>
<th>III</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5 Years (or more than 5 years)</td>
<td>3 years</td>
<td>8 years or more</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 years</td>
<td>3 years</td>
<td>7 years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 years</td>
<td>3 years</td>
<td>6 years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 years</td>
<td>3 years</td>
<td>5 years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 year</td>
<td>4 years</td>
<td>5 years</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:**

1. Individual auditor shall include other individuals or firms whose name or trade mark or brand is used by such individual, if any.

2. Consecutive years shall mean all the preceding financial years for which the individual auditor has been the auditor until there has been a break by five years or more.

**Illustration explaining rotation in case of audit firm**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number of consecutive years for which an audit firm has been functioning as auditor in the same company [in the first AGM held after the commencement of provisions of section 139(2)]</th>
<th>Maximum number of consecutive years for which the firm may be appointed in the same company (including transitional period)</th>
<th>Aggregate period which the firm would complete in the same company in view of column I and II</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>II</td>
<td>III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 Years (or more than 10 years)</td>
<td>3 years</td>
<td>13 years or more</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 years</td>
<td>3 years</td>
<td>12 years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 years</td>
<td>3 years</td>
<td>11 years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 years</td>
<td>3 years</td>
<td>10 years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 year</td>
<td>4 years</td>
<td>10 years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 years</td>
<td>5 years</td>
<td>10 years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 years</td>
<td>6 years</td>
<td>10 years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 year</td>
<td>7 years</td>
<td>10 years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 years</td>
<td>8 years</td>
<td>10 years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 year</td>
<td>9 years</td>
<td>10 years</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:**

1. Audit Firm shall include other firms whose name or trade mark or brand is used by the firm or any of its partners.

2. Consecutive years shall mean all the preceding financial years for which the firm has
been the auditor until there has been a break by five years or more.

(4) Where a company has appointed two or more individuals or firms or a combination thereof as joint auditors, the company may follow the rotation of auditors in such a manner that both or all of the joint auditors, as the case maybe, do not complete their term in the same year.

4 Provisions relating to Audit Committee

4.1 Applicability of section 177 i.e. Constitution of Audit Committee: Where a company is required to constitute an Audit Committee under section 177, all appointments, including the filling of a casual vacancy of an auditor under this section shall be made after taking into account the recommendations of such committee.

Diagram showing class of companies to constitute Audit Committee

It is important to know that in addition to listed public companies, following classes of companies shall constitute an Audit Committee -

(i) all public companies with a paid up capital of ten crore rupees or more;
(ii) all public companies having turnover of one hundred crore rupees or more;
(iii) all public companies, having in aggregate, outstanding loans or borrowings or debentures or deposits exceeding fifty crore rupees or more.

Explanation- The paid up share capital or turnover or outstanding loans, or borrowings or debentures or deposits, as the case may be, as existing on the date of last audited Financial Statements shall be taken into account for the purposes of this rule.
Example: XYZ Ltd., a public company having paid up capital of ₹ 9 crore but having turnover of ₹ 150 crore, will be required to constitute an Audit Committee under section 177 because the requirement for constitution of Audit Committee arises if the company falls into any of the prescribed category.

4.2 Manner and procedure of selection and appointment of auditors - Rule 3 of CAAR, 2014 prescribes the following manner and procedure of selection and appointment of auditors -

(1) In case of a company that is required to constitute an Audit Committee under section 177, the committee, and, in cases where such a committee is not required to be constituted, the Board, shall take into consideration the qualifications and experience of the individual or the firm proposed to be considered for appointment as auditor and whether such qualifications and experience are commensurate with the size and requirements of the company.

It may be noted that while considering the appointment, the Audit Committee or the Board, as the case may be, shall have regard to any order or pending proceeding relating to professional matters of conduct against the proposed auditor before the Institute of Chartered Accountants of India or any competent authority or any Court.

(2) The Audit Committee or the Board, as the case may be, may call for such other information from the proposed auditor as it may deem fit.

(3) Subject to the provisions of sub-rule (1), where a company is required to constitute the Audit Committee, the committee shall recommend the name of an individual or a firm as auditor to the Board for consideration and in other cases, the Board shall consider and recommend an individual or a firm as auditor to the members in the annual general meeting for appointment.

(4) If the Board agrees with the recommendation of the Audit Committee, it shall further recommend the appointment of an individual or a firm as auditor to the members in the annual general meeting.

(5) If the Board disagrees with the recommendation of the Audit Committee, it shall refer back the recommendation to the committee for reconsideration citing reasons for such disagreement.

(6) If the Audit Committee, after considering the reasons given by the Board, decides not to reconsider its original recommendation, the Board shall record reasons for its disagreement with the committee and send its own recommendation for consideration of the members in the annual general meeting; and if the Board agrees with the recommendations of the Audit Committee, it shall place the matter for consideration by members in the annual general meeting.

(7) The auditor appointed in the annual general meeting shall hold office from the conclusion of that meeting till the conclusion of the sixth annual general meeting, with the meeting wherein such appointment has been made being counted as the first meeting.
5. **Auditor’s Remuneration**

As per section 142 of the Act, the remuneration of the auditor of a company shall be fixed in its general meeting or in such manner as may be determined therein. However, board may fix remuneration of the first auditor appointed by it.

Further, the remuneration, in addition to the fee payable to an auditor, include the expenses, if any, incurred by the auditor in connection with the audit of the company and any facility extended to him but does not include any remuneration paid to him for any other service rendered by him at the request of the company. Therefore, it has been clarified that the remuneration to Auditor shall also include any facility provided to him.

6. **Removal of Auditors**

6.1 **Removal of Auditor Before Expiry of Term:** According to Section 140(1), the auditor appointed under section 139 may be removed from his office before the expiry of his term only by a special resolution of the company, after obtaining the previous approval of the Central Government in that behalf as per Rule 7 of CAAR, 2014.

![Fig: Auditor leaving office of the auditor](image)

(1) The application to the Central Government for removal of auditor shall be made in Form ADT-2 and shall be accompanied with fees as provided for this purpose under the Companies (Registration Offices and Fees) Rules, 2014.

(2) The application shall be made to the Central Government within 30 days of the resolution passed by the Board.

(3) The company shall hold the general meeting within 60 days of receipt of approval of the Central Government for passing the special resolution.

It is important to note that before taking any action for removal before expiry of terms, the auditor concerned shall be given a reasonable opportunity of being heard.

### Direction by Tribunal in case Auditor acted in a Fraudulent Manner:

As per sub-section (5) of the section 140, the Tribunal either suo motu or on an application made to it by the Central Government or by any person concerned, if it is satisfied that the auditor of a company has, whether directly or indirectly, acted in a fraudulent manner or abetted or colluded in any fraud by, or in relation to, the company or its directors or officers, it may, by order, direct the company to change its auditors.

However, if the application is made by the Central Government and the Tribunal is satisfied that any change of the auditor is required, it shall within fifteen days of receipt of such application,

---

5 Source of image: www.123rf.com
make an order that he shall not function as an auditor and the Central Government may appoint another auditor in his place.

It may be noted that an auditor, whether individual or firm, against whom final order has been passed by the Tribunal under this section shall not be eligible to be appointed as an auditor of any company for a period of five years from the date of passing of the order and the auditor shall also be liable for action under section 447.

It is hereby clarified that in the case of a firm, the liability shall be of the firm and that of every partner or partners who acted in a fraudulent manner or abetted or colluded in any fraud by, or in relation to, the company or its director or officers.

6.2 Appointment of Auditor Other Than Retiring Auditor: Section 140(4) lays down procedure to appoint an auditor other than retiring auditor who was removed-

(1) Special notice shall be required for a resolution at an annual general meeting appointing as auditor a person other than a retiring auditor, or providing expressly that a retiring auditor shall not be re-appointed, except where the retiring auditor has completed a consecutive tenure of five years or as the case may be, ten years, as provided under sub-section (2) of section 139.

(2) On receipt of notice of such a resolution, the company shall forthwith send a copy thereof to the retiring auditor.

(3) Where notice is given of such a resolution and the retiring auditor makes with respect thereto representation in writing to the company (not exceeding a reasonable length) and requests its notification to members of the company, the company shall, unless the representation is received by it too late for it to do so,-

   (a) in any notice of the resolution given to members of the company, state the fact of the representation having been made; and

   (b) send a copy of the representation to every member of the company to whom notice of the meeting is sent, whether before or after the receipt of the representation by the company, and if a copy of the representation is not sent as aforesaid because it was received too late or because of the company's default, the auditor may (without prejudice to his right to be heard orally) require that the representation shall be read out at the meeting.

Students may note that if a copy of representation is not sent as aforesaid, a copy thereof shall be field with the Registrar.

Curtailing right of the auditor regarding circulation of copy of representation in the case of appointment of auditor other than retiring auditor under section 140(4) of the companies act, 2013:

If the Tribunal is satisfied on an application either of the company or of any other aggrieved person that the rights conferred by section 140(4) of the Companies Act, 2013 are being abused by the auditor, then, the copy of the representation may not be sent and the representation need
not be read out at the meeting.

7. Ceiling on Number of Audits

It has been mentioned earlier that before appointment is given to any auditor, the company must obtain a certificate from him to the effect that the appointment, if made, will not result in an excess holding of company audit by the auditor concerned over the limit laid down in section 141(3)(g) of the Companies Act, 2013 which prescribes that a person who is in full time employment elsewhere or a person or a partner of a firm holding appointment as its auditor, if such person or partner is at the date of such appointment or reappointment holding appointment as auditor of more than twenty companies other than one person companies, dormant companies, small companies and private companies having paid-up share capital less than ₹100 crore, shall not be eligible for appointment as an Auditor of a Company.

In the case of a firm of auditors, it has been further provided that ‘specified number of companies’ shall be construed as the number of companies specified for every partner of the firm who is not in full time employment elsewhere.

This limit of 20 company audits is per person. In the case of an audit firm having 3 partners, the overall ceiling will be $3 \times 20 = 60$ company audits. Sometimes, a chartered accountant is a partner in a number of auditing firms. In such a case, all the firms in which he is partner or proprietor will be together entitled to 20 company audits on his account. Subject to the overall ceiling of company audits, how they allocate the 20 audits between themselves is their affairs.

**CASE STUDY**

“ABC & Co.” is an Audit Firm having partners “Mr. A”, “Mr. B” and “Mr. C”, Chartered Accountants. “Mr. A”, “Mr. B” and “Mr. C” are holding appointment as an Auditor in 4, 6 and 10 Companies respectively.

(i) Provide the maximum number of Audits remaining in the name of “ABC & Co.”

(ii) Provide the maximum number of Audits remaining in the name of individual partner i.e. Mr. A, Mr. B and Mr. C.

(iii) Can ABC & Co. accept the appointment as an auditor in 60 private companies having paid-up share capital less than ₹100 crore, 2 small companies and 1 dormant company?

(iv) Would your answer be different, if out of those 60 private companies, 45 companies are having paid-up share capital of ₹110 crore each?

**Fact of the Case:** In the instant case, Mr. A is holding appointment in 4 companies, whereas Mr. B is having appointment in 6 Companies and Mr. C is having appointment in 10 Companies. In aggregate all three partners are having 20 audits.

**Provisions and Explanations:** Section 141(3)(g) of the Companies Act, 2013 states that the following persons shall not be eligible for appointment as an auditor of a company i.e. a person who is in full time employment elsewhere; or a person, or a partner of a firm holding appointment as its auditor, if such person, or partner is at the date of such appointment, or reappointment...
holding appointment as auditor of more than twenty companies other than one person companies, dormant companies, small companies and private companies having paid-up share capital less than ₹ 100 crore.

As per section 141(3)(g), this limit of 20 company audits is per person. In the case of an audit firm having 3 partners, the overall ceiling will be $3 \times 20 = 60$ company audits. Sometimes, a chartered accountant is a partner in a number of auditing firms. In such a case, all the firms in which he is partner or proprietor will be together entitled to 20 company audits on his account.

**Conclusion:**

(i) Therefore, ABC & Co. can hold appointment as an auditor of 40 more companies:

\[
\text{Total Number of Audits available to the Firm} = 20 \times 3 = 60 \\
\text{Number of Audits already taken by all the partners} \\
\text{In their individual capacity} = 4 + 6 + 10 = 20 \\
\text{Remaining number of Audits available to the Firm} = 40
\]

(ii) With reference to above provisions an auditor can hold more appointment as auditor = ceiling limit as per section 141(3)(g) - already holding appointments as an auditor. Hence

(1) Mr. A can hold: $20 - 4 = 16$ more audits. (2) Mr. B can hold $20 - 6 = 14$ more audits and (3) Mr. C can hold $20 - 10 = 10$ more audits.

(iii) In view of above discussed provisions, ABC & Co. can hold appointment as an auditor in all the 60 private companies having paid-up share capital less than ₹ 100 crore, 2 small companies and 1 dormant company as these are excluded from the ceiling limit of company audits given under section 141(3)(g) of the Companies Act, 2013.

(iv) As per fact of the case, ABC & Co. is already having 20 company audits and they can also accept 40 more company audits. In addition they can also conduct the audit of one person companies, small companies, dormant companies and private companies having paid up share capital less than ₹ 100 crores. In the given case, out of the 60 private companies, ABC & Co. is offered 45 companies having paid-up share capital of ₹ 110 crore each.

Therefore, ABC & Co. can also accept the appointment as an auditor for 2 small companies, 1 dormant company, 15 private companies having paid-up share capital less than ₹ 100 crore and 40 private companies having paid-up share capital of ₹ 110 crore each in addition to above 20 company audits already holding.

Council General Guidelines, 2008 (Chapter VIII): In exercise of the powers conferred by clause (ii) of Part II of the Second Schedule to the Chartered Accountants Act, 1949, the Council of the Institute of Chartered Accountants of India hereby specifies that a member of the Institute in practice shall be deemed to be guilty of professional misconduct, if he holds at any time appointment of more than the “specified number of audit assignments of the companies under Section 224 and for Section 226 of the Companies Act, 1956 (now section 141(3)(g) of the Companies Act, 2013).
It may be noted that in the case of a firm of chartered accountants in practice, the specified number of audit assignments shall be construed as the specified number of audit assignments for every partner of the firm.

It may also be noted that where any partner of the firm of chartered accountants in practice is also a partner of any other firm or firms of chartered accountants in practice, the number of audit assignments which may be taken for all the firms together in relation to such partner shall not exceed the specified number of audit assignments in the aggregate.

It is further provided that where any partner of a firm or firms of chartered accountants in practice accepts one or more audit assignments in his individual capacity, or in the name of his proprietary firm, the total number of such assignment which may be accepted by all firms in relation to such chartered accountant and by him shall not exceed the specified number of audit assignments in the aggregate.

1. In computing the specified number of audit assignments-
   (a) the number of such assignments, which he or any partner of his firm has accepted whether singly or in combination with any other chartered accountant in practice or firm of such chartered accountants, shall be taken into account.
   (b) the number of partners of a firm on the date of acceptance of audit assignment shall be taken into account.
   (c) a chartered accountant in full time employment elsewhere shall not be taken into account.

2. A chartered accountant in practice as well as firm of chartered accountants in practice shall maintain a record of the audit assignments accepted by him or by the firm of chartered accountants, or by any of the partner of the firm in his individual name or as a partner of any other firm as far as possible, in the prescribed manner.

### Ceiling on Tax Audit Assignments:

The specified number of tax audit assignments that an auditor, as an individual or as a partner of a firm, can accept is 60 numbers. ICAI has notified that a chartered accountant in practice shall be deemed to be guilty of professional misconduct, if he accepts in a financial year, more than the specified number of tax audit assignments u/s 44AB.

8. **Powers/Rights of Auditors**

   The auditor has the following powers/rights while conducting an audit:

   (a) **Right of access to books, etc.** – **Section 143(1)** of the Act provides that the auditor of a company, at all times, shall have a right of access to the books of account and vouchers of the company, whether kept at the registered office of the company or at any other place and he is entitled to require from the officers of the company such information and explanation as he may consider necessary for the performance of his duties as auditor.

   It may be noted that according to **section 2(59)** of the Act, the term ‘officer’ includes any director, manager or key managerial personnel or any person in accordance with whose directions or instructions the Board of Directors or any one or more of the directors is or are accustomed to act;
The phrase ‘books, accounts and vouchers’ includes all books which have any bearing, or are likely to have any bearing on the accounts, whether these be the usual financial books or the statutory or statistical books; memoranda books, e.g., inventory books, costing records and the like may also be inspected by the auditor. Similarly the term ‘voucher’ includes all or any of the correspondence which may in any way serve to vouch for the accuracy of the accounts. Thus, the right of access is not restricted to books of account alone and it is for the auditor to determine what record or document is necessary for the purpose of the audit.

The right of access is not limited to those books and records maintained at the registered or head office so that in the case of a company with branches, the right also extends to the branch records, if the auditor considers it necessary to have access thereto as per Section 143(8).

Example: X Ltd. restrains its company auditor from visiting another branch at different location and having access to the inventory records maintained at that branch because the branch is already audited by another auditor and the report has been received. Here, it may be noted that the company auditor has right to visit the branch, even if the branch accounts are audited by another auditor, if he considers it necessary to do so for the performance of his duties as auditor.

(b) Right to obtain information and explanation from officers - This right of the auditor to obtain from the officers of the company such information and explanations as he may think necessary for the performance of his duties as auditor is a wide and important power. In the absence of such power, the auditor would not be able to obtain details of amount collected by the directors, etc. from any other company, firm or person as well as of any benefits in kind derived by the directors from the company, which may not be known from an examination of the books. It is for the auditor to decide the matters in respect of which information and explanations are required by him. When the auditor is not provided the information required by him or is denied access to books, etc., his only remedy would be to report to the members that he could not obtain all the information and explanations he had required or considered necessary for the performance of his duties as auditors.

(c) Right to receive notices and to attend general meeting – The auditors of a company are entitled to attend any general meeting of the company (the right is not restricted to those at which the accounts audited by them are to be discussed); also to receive all the notices and other communications relating to the general meetings, which members are entitled to receive and to be heard at any general meeting in any part of the business of the meeting which concerns them as auditors.

Section 146 of the Companies Act, 2013 discusses right as well as duty of the auditor. According to the section 146:

“all notices of, and other communications relating to, any general meeting shall be forwarded to the auditor of the company, and the auditor shall, unless otherwise exempted by the company, attend either by himself or through his authorised representative, who shall also be qualified to be an auditor, any general meeting and shall have right to be heard at such meeting on any part of the business which concerns him as the auditor.”
Thus, it is right of the auditor to receive notices and other communications relating to any general meeting and to be heard at such meeting, relating to the matter of his concern, however, it is duty of the auditor to attend the same or through his authorised representative unless otherwise exempted.

(d) Right to report to the members of the company on the accounts examined by him – The auditor shall make a report to the members of the company on the accounts examined by him and on every financial statements which are required by or under this Act to be laid before the company in general meeting and the report shall after taking into account the provisions of this Act, the accounting and auditing standards and matters which are required to be included in the audit report under the provisions of this Act or any rules made there under or under any order made under this section and to the best of his information and knowledge, the said accounts, financial statements give a true and fair view of the state of the company’s affairs as at the end of its financial year and profit or loss and cash flow for the year and such other matters as may be prescribed.

(e) Right to Lien – In terms of the general principles of law, any person having the lawful possession of somebody else’s property, on which he has worked, may retain the property for non-payment of his dues on account of the work done on the property. On this premise, auditor can exercise lien on books and documents placed at his possession by the client for non-payment of fees, for work done on the books and documents. The Institute of Chartered Accountants in England and Wales has expressed a similar view on the following conditions:

(i) Documents retained must belong to the client who owes the money.

(ii) Documents must have come into possession of the auditor on the authority of the client. They must not have been received through irregular or illegal means. In case of a company client, they must be received on the authority of the Board of Directors.

(iii) The auditor can retain the documents only if he has done work on the documents assigned to him.

(iv) Such of the documents can be retained which are connected with the work on which fees have not been paid.

Under section 128 of the Act, books of account of a company must be kept at the registered office. These provisions ordinarily make it impracticable for the auditor to have possession of the books and documents. The company provides reasonable facility to auditor for inspection of the books of account by directors and others authorised to inspect under the Act. Taking an overall view of the matter, it seems that though legally, auditor may exercise right of lien in cases of companies, it is mostly impracticable for legal and practicable constraints. His working papers being his own property, the question of lien, on them does not arise.

SA 230 issued by ICAI on Audit Documentation (explanatory text, A- 25), “Standard on Quality Control (SQC) 1, “Quality Control for Firms that Perform Audits and Reviews of Historical Financial Information, and Other Assurance and Related Services Engagements”, issued by the Institute, provides that, unless otherwise specified by law or regulation, audit documentation is the property of the auditor. He may at his discretion, make portions of, or extracts from, audit
documentation available to clients, provided such disclosure does not undermine the validity of the work performed, or, in the case of assurance engagements, the independence of the auditor or of his personnel."

9. Duties of Auditors

Sections 143 of the Companies Act, 2013 specifies the duties of an auditor of a company in a quite comprehensive manner. It is noteworthy that scope of duties of an auditor has generally been extending over all these years.

(1) Duty of Auditor to Inquire on certain matters: It is the duty of auditor to inquire into the following matters-

(a) whether loans and advances made by the company on the basis of security have been properly secured and whether the terms on which they have been made are prejudicial to the interests of the company or its members;

(b) whether transactions of the company which are represented merely by book entries are prejudicial to the interests of the company;

(c) where the company not being an investment company or a banking company, whether so much of the assets of the company as consist of shares, debentures and other securities have been sold at a price less than that at which they were purchased by the company;

(d) whether loans and advances made by the company have been shown as deposits;

(e) whether personal expenses have been charged to revenue account;

(f) where it is stated in the books and documents of the company that any shares have been allotted for cash, whether cash has actually been received in respect of such allotment, and if no cash has actually been so received, whether the position as stated in the account books and the balance sheet is correct, regular and not misleading.

The opinion of the Research Committee of the Institute of Chartered Accountants of India on section 143(1) is reproduced below:

"The auditor is not required to report on the matters specified in sub-section (1) unless he has any special comments to make on any of the items referred to therein. If he is satisfied as a result of the inquiries, he has no further duty to report that he is so satisfied. In such a case, the content of the Auditor’s Report will remain exactly the same as the auditor has to inquire and apply his mind to the information elicited by the enquiry, in deciding whether or not any reference needs to be made in his report. In our opinion, it is in this light that the auditor has to consider his duties under section 143(1)."

Therefore, it could be said that the auditor should make a report to the members in case he finds answer to any of these matters in adverse.
Duty to Sign the Audit Report: As per section 145 of the Companies Act, 2013, the person appointed as an auditor of the company shall sign the auditor's report or sign or certify any other document of the company, in accordance with the provisions of section 141(2).

**Section 141(2)** of the Companies Act, 2013 states that where a firm including a limited liability partnership is appointed as an auditor of a company, only the partners who are chartered accountants shall be authorised to act and sign on behalf of the firm.

The qualifications, observations or comments on financial transactions or matters, which have any adverse effect on the functioning of the company mentioned in the auditor's report shall be read before the company in general meeting.

Duty to comply with Auditing Standards: As per section 143(9) of the Companies Act, 2013, every auditor shall comply with the auditing standards. Further, as per section 143(10) of the Act, the Central Government may prescribe the standards of auditing as recommended by the Institute of Chartered Accountants of India, in consultation with and after examination of the recommendations made by the National Financial Reporting Authority.

Duty to report: As per section 143(3), the auditor's report shall also state –

(a) whether he has sought and obtained all the information and explanations which to the best of his knowledge and belief were necessary for the purpose of his audit and if not, the details thereof and the effect of such information on the financial statements;

(b) whether, in his opinion, proper books of account as required by law have been kept by the company so far as appears from his examination of those books and proper returns adequate for the purposes of his audit have been received from branches not visited by him;

(c) whether the report on the accounts of any branch office of the company audited under sub-section (8) by a person other than the company’s auditors has been sent to him under the proviso to that sub-section and the manner in which he has dealt with it in preparing his report;

(d) whether the company’s balance sheet and profit and loss account dealt with in the report are in agreement with the books of account and returns;

(e) whether, in his opinion, the financial statements comply with the accounting standards;

(f) the observations or comments of the auditors on financial transactions or matters which have any adverse effect on the functioning of the company;

(g) whether any director is disqualified from being appointed as a director under sub-section (2) of the section 164;

(h) any qualification, reservation or adverse remark relating to the maintenance of accounts and other matters connected therewith;

(i) whether the company has adequate internal financial controls **with reference to**
financial statements in place and the operating effectiveness of such controls;

However, it may be noted that the reporting requirement on adequacy of internal financial controls (IFCs) with reference to financial statements shall not be applicable to a private company which is a–

(I) One person company; or

(ii) Small company; or

(iii) Company having turnover less than ₹ 50 crore as per latest audited financial statement and having aggregate borrowings from banks or financial institutions or any body corporate at any point of time during the financial year less than ₹ 25 crore.

(j) such other matters as may be prescribed. Rule 11 of the Companies (Audit and Auditors) Rules, 2014 prescribes the other matters to be included in auditor’s report. The auditor’s report shall also include their views and comments on the following matters, namely–

(i) whether the company has disclosed the impact, if any, of pending litigations on its financial position in its financial statement;

(ii) whether the company has made provision, as required under any law or accounting standards, for material foreseeable losses, if any, on long term contracts including derivative contracts;

(iii) whether there has been any delay in transferring amounts, required to be transferred, to the Investor Education and Protection Fund by the company.

[Notes: (1) Students may note that the auditor is also required to report on certain additional matters specified under CARO, 2016 which is discussed later under Para 10 Reporting under Companies (Auditor’s Report) Order, 2016.

(2) Students are also required to refer Guidance note on Reporting under section 143(3)(f) and (h) of the Companies Act, 2013.]
Duty to report on frauds:

A. Reporting to the Central Government: As per section 143(12) of the Companies Act, 2013 read with Rule 13 of the Companies (Audit and Auditors) Rules, 2014, if an auditor of a company in the course of the performance of his duties as auditor, has reason to believe that an offence of fraud, which involves or is expected to involve individually an amount of ₹ 1 crore or above, is being or has been committed in the company by its officers or employees, the auditor shall report the matter to the Central Government within such time and in such manner as prescribed.

B. Reporting to the Audit Committee or Board: In case of a fraud involving lesser than the specified amount [i.e. less than ₹ 1 crore], the auditor shall report the matter to the audit committee constituted under section 177 or to the Board in other cases within such time and in such manner as prescribed.

C. Disclosure in the Board’s Report: The companies, whose auditors have reported frauds under this sub-section (12) to the audit committee or the Board, but not reported to the Central Government, shall disclose the details about such frauds in the Board’s report in such manner as prescribed.

Sub-section (13) of section 143 of the Companies Act, 2013 safeguards the act of fraud reporting by the auditor if it is done in good faith. It states that no duty to which an auditor of a company may be subject to shall be regarded as having been contravened by reason of his reporting the matter above if it is done in good faith.

It is very important to note that the provisions regarding fraud reporting shall also apply, mutatis mutandis, to a cost auditor and a secretarial auditor during the performance of his duties under section 148 and section 204 respectively. If any auditor, cost accountant or company secretary in practice do not comply with the provisions of sub-section (12) of section 143, he shall be punishable with fine which shall not be less than ₹ 1 lakh but which may extend to ₹ 25 lakh.

The auditor is also required to report under clause (x) of paragraph 3 of Companies (Auditor’s Report) Order, 2016 [CARO, 2016], whether any fraud by the company or any fraud on the Company by its officers or employees has been noticed or reported during the year. If yes, the nature and the amount involved is to be indicated.

[Notes: For detailed provisions of CARO, 2016, students may refer Para 10 Reporting under Companies (Auditor’s Report) Order, 2016]

Example: The head accountant of a company entered fake invoices of credit purchases in the books of account aggregate of ₹ 50 lakh and cleared all the payments to such bogus creditor. Here, the auditor of the company is required to report the fraudulent activity to
the Board or Audit Committee (as the case may be) within 2 days of his knowledge of fraud. Further, the company is also required to disclose the same in Board’s Report.

It may be noted that the auditor need not to report the central government as the amount of fraud involved is less than ₹ 1 crore, however, reporting under CARO, 2016 is required.

(6) **Duty to report on any other matter specified by Central Government:** The Central Government may, in consultation with the National Financial Reporting Authority (NFRA), by general or special order, direct, in respect of such class or description of companies, as may be specified in the order, that the auditor's report shall also include a statement on such matters as may be specified therein.

However, as per the notification dated 29.03.2016, till the time NFRA is constituted, the Central Government may hold consultation required under this sub-section with the Committee chaired by an officer of the rank of Joint Secretary or equivalent in the MCA and the Committee shall have the representatives from the ICAI and Industry Chambers and also special invitees from the National Advisory Committee on Accounting Standards (NACAS) and the office of the C&AG.

*Note: Students may note that Companies (Auditor’s Report) Order, 2016 has been notified in this perspective which is discussed later under Para 10 Reporting under Companies (Auditor’s Report) Order, 2016*

(7) **Duties and powers of the company's auditor with reference to the audit of the branch and the branch auditor are discussed separately in the chapter under heading 13 branch audit.**

(8) **Duty to state the reason for qualification or negative report:** As per section 143(4), where any of the matters required to be included in the audit report is answered in the negative or with a qualification, the report shall state the reasons there for.


The Central Government, after consultation with the committee constituted under proviso to section 143(11) of the Companies Act, 2013, and in supersession of the Companies (Auditor’s Report) Order, 2015 dated the 10th April, 2015, has issued the Companies (Auditor’s Report) Order, 2016, (CARO, 2016) under section 143(11) of the Companies Act, 2013, dated 29th March, 2016. The requirements of the Order are supplemental to the existing provisions of section 143 of the Act regarding the auditor’s report.

The Order is not intended to limit the duties and responsibilities of auditors but only requires a statement to be included in the audit report in respect of the matters specified therein.

**Applicability of the Order:** The CARO, 2016 is an additional reporting requirement Order. The order applies to every company including a foreign company as defined in clause (42) of section 2 of the Companies Act, 2013.

However, the Order specifically **exempts** the following class of companies-
(i) a banking company as defined in clause (c) of section 5 of the Banking Regulation Act, 1949;
(ii) an insurance company as defined under the Insurance Act, 1938;
(iii) a company licensed to operate under section 8 of the Companies Act;
(iv) a One Person Company as defined under clause (62) of section 2 of the Companies Act;
(v) a small company as defined under clause (85) of section 2 of the Companies Act; and
(vi) a private limited company, not being a subsidiary or holding company of a public company, having a paid up capital and reserves and surplus not more than ₹ 1 crore as on the balance sheet date and which does not have total borrowings exceeding ₹ 1 crore from any bank or financial institution at any point of time during the financial year and which does not have a total revenue as disclosed in Schedule III to the Companies Act, 2013 (including revenue from discontinuing operations) exceeding ₹ 10 crore during the financial year as per the financial statements.

It may be noted that the Order shall not be applicable to the auditor’s report on consolidated financial statements.

**EXAMPLES**

Ex. 1: ‘Educating Child’ is a limited company registered under section 8 of the Companies Act, 2013.

In the given case, ‘Educating Child’ is licensed to operate under section 8 of the Companies Act, 2013. Therefore, CARO, 2016 shall not be applicable to ‘Educating Child’ accordingly.
Ex. 2: Ashu Pvt. Ltd. has fully paid capital and reserves of ₹50 lakh. During the year, the company had borrowed ₹70 lakh each from a bank and a financial institution independently. It has the turnover of ₹900 lakh.

In the given case of Ashu Pvt. Ltd., it has paid capital and reserves of ₹50 lakh i.e. less than ₹1 crore, turnover of ₹9 crore i.e. less than ₹10 crore. However, it has maximum outstanding borrowings of ₹1.40 crore (₹70 lakh + ₹70 lakh) collectively from bank and financial institution.

Therefore, it fails to fulfill the condition relating to borrowings. Thus, CARO, 2016 shall be applicable to Ashu Pvt. Ltd. accordingly.

Matters to be included in the Auditor’s Report: Paragraph 3 of the Order requires the auditor to include a statement in the auditor’s report on the following matters, namely-

(i) (a) whether the company is maintaining proper records showing full particulars, including quantitative details and situation of fixed assets;

(b) whether these fixed assets have been physically verified by the management at reasonable intervals; whether any material discrepancies were noticed on such verification and if so, whether the same have been properly dealt with in the books of account;

(c) whether the title deeds of immovable properties are held in the name of the company. If not, provide the details thereof;

(ii) whether physical verification of inventory has been conducted at reasonable intervals by the management and whether any material discrepancies were noticed and if so, whether they have been properly dealt with in the books of account;

(iii) whether the company has granted any loans, secured or unsecured to companies, firms, Limited Liability Partnerships or other parties covered in the register maintained under section 189 of the Companies Act, 2013. If so,

(a) whether the terms and conditions of the grant of such loans are not prejudicial to the company's interest;

(b) whether the schedule of repayment of principal and payment of interest has been stipulated and whether the repayments or receipts are regular;

(c) if the amount is overdue, state the total amount overdue for more than ninety days, and whether reasonable steps have been taken by the company for recovery of the principal and interest;

(iv) in respect of loans, investments, guarantees, and security whether provisions of section 185 and 186 of the Companies Act, 2013 have been complied with. If not, provide the details thereof.

(v) in case the company has accepted deposits, whether the directives issued by the Reserve Bank of India and the provisions of sections 73 to 76 or any other relevant provisions of
the Companies Act, 2013 and the rules framed there under, where applicable, have been complied with? If not, the nature of such contraventions be stated; If an order has been passed by Company Law Board or National Company Law Tribunal or Reserve Bank of India or any court or any other tribunal, whether the same has been complied with or not?

(vi) where maintenance of cost records has been specified by the Central Government under sub-section (1) of section 148 of the Companies Act, 2013 and whether such accounts and records have been so made and maintained.

(vii) (a) whether the company is regular in depositing undisputed statutory dues including provident fund, employees’ state insurance, income-tax, sales-tax, service tax, duty of customs, duty of excise, value added tax, cess and any other statutory dues with the appropriate authorities and if not, the extent of the arrears of outstanding statutory dues as at the last day of the financial year concerned for a period of more than six months from the date they became payable, shall be indicated;

(b) where dues of income tax or sales tax or service tax or duty of customs or duty of excise or value added tax have not been deposited on account of any dispute, then the amounts involved and the forum where dispute is pending shall be mentioned. (A mere representation to the concerned Department shall not constitute a dispute).

(viii) whether the company has defaulted in repayment of loans or borrowing to a financial institution, bank, Government or dues to debenture holders? If yes, the period and the amount of default to be reported (in case of defaults to banks, financial institutions, and Government, lender wise details to be provided).

(ix) whether moneys raised by way of initial public offer or further public offer (including debt instruments) and term loans were applied for the purposes for which those are raised. If not, the details together with delays or default and subsequent rectification, if any, as may be applicable, be reported;

(x) whether any fraud by the company or any fraud on the Company by its officers or employees has been noticed or reported during the year; If yes, the nature and the amount involved is to be indicated;

(xi) whether managerial remuneration has been paid or provided in accordance with the requisite approvals mandated by the provisions of section 197 read with Schedule V to the Companies Act, 2013? If not, state the amount involved and steps taken by the company for securing refund of the same;

(xii) whether the Nidhi Company has complied with the Net Owned Funds to Deposits in the ratio of 1:20 to meet out the liability and whether the Nidhi Company is maintaining ten per cent unencumbered term deposits as specified in the Nidhi Rules, 2014 to meet out the liability;

(xiii) whether all transactions with the related parties are in compliance with sections 177 and 188 of Companies Act, 2013 where applicable and the details have been disclosed in the Financial Statements etc., as required by the applicable accounting standards;
(xiv) whether the company has made any preferential allotment or private placement of shares or fully or partly convertible debentures during the year under review and if so, as to whether the requirement of section 42 of the Companies Act, 2013 have been complied with and the amount raised have been used for the purposes for which the funds were raised. If not, provide the details in respect of the amount involved and nature of non-compliance;

(xv) whether the company has entered into any non-cash transactions with directors or persons connected with him and if so, whether the provisions of section 192 of Companies Act, 2013 have been complied with;

(xvi) whether the company is required to be registered under section 45-IA of the Reserve Bank of India Act, 1934 and if so, whether the registration has been obtained.

**Reasons to be Stated for Unfavourable or Qualified Answers:** Where the answer to any of the questions referred to in paragraph 3 of the Order is unfavourable or qualified, in the auditor’s report, the auditor shall also state the basis for such unfavourable or qualified answer, as the case may be.

Further, where the auditor is unable to express any opinion on any specified matter, his report shall indicate such fact together with the reasons why it is not possible for him to give his opinion on the same.

**Example:** The company has dispensed with the practice of taking inventory of their inventories at the year-end as in their opinion the exercise is redundant, time consuming and intrusion to normal functioning of the operations. Explain reporting requirement under CARO, 2016.

**Reporting for Physical Verification of Inventory:** Clause (ii) of Para 3 of CARO, 2016, requires the auditor to report whether physical verification of inventory has been conducted at reasonable intervals by the management and whether any material discrepancies were noticed and if so, whether they have been properly dealt with in the books of account.

The physical verification of inventory is the responsibility of the management of the company which should verify all material items at least once in a year and more often in appropriate cases.

In the given case, the above requirement of physical verification of inventory by the management has not been taken place and therefore the auditor should point out the same under CARO, 2016. He may consider the impact on financial statement and report accordingly.

11. Disclosure in the Auditor’s Report

The following paragraphs deal with the manner of qualification and the manner of disclosure, if any, to be made in the auditor’s report.

**AS-1 – Disclosure of Accounting Policies**

In the case of a company, members should quality their audit reports in case –
(a) accounting policies required to be disclosed under Schedule III or any other provisions of the Companies Act, 2013 have not been disclosed, or
(b) accounts have not been prepared on accrual basis, or
(c) the fundamental accounting assumption of going concern has not been followed and this fact has not been disclosed in the financial statements, or
(d) proper disclosures regarding changes in the accounting policies have not been made.

Where a company has been given a specific exemption regarding any of the matters stated above but the fact of such exemption has not been adequately disclosed in the accounts, the member should mention the fact of exemption in his audit report without necessarily making it a subject matter of audit qualification.

In view of the above, the auditor will have to consider different circumstances whether the audit report has to be qualified or only disclosures have to be given.

In the case of enterprises not governed by the Companies Act, the member should examine the relevant statute and make suitable qualification in his audit report in case adequate disclosures regarding accounting policies have not been made as per the statutory requirements. Similarly, the member should examine if the fundamental accounting assumptions have been followed in preparing the financial statements or not. In appropriate cases, he should consider whether, keeping in view the requirements of the applicable laws, a qualification in his report is necessary.

In the event of non-compliance by enterprises not governed by the Companies Act, in situations where the relevant statute does not require such disclosures to be made, the member should make adequate disclosure in his audit report without necessarily making it a subject matter of audit qualification.

In making a qualification / disclosure in the audit report, the auditor should consider the materiality of the relevant item. Thus, the auditor need not make qualification / disclosure in respect of items which, in his judgement, are not material.

A disclosure, which is not a subject matter of audit qualification, should be made in the auditor’s report in a manner that it is clear to the reader that the disclosure does not constitute an audit qualification. The paragraph containing the auditor’s opinion on true and fair view should not include a reference to the paragraph containing the aforesaid disclosure.

12. Joint Audit

The practice of appointing Chartered Accountants as joint auditors is quite widespread in big companies and corporations. Joint audit basically implies pooling together the resources and expertise of more than one firm of auditors to render an expert job in a given time period which may be difficult to accomplish acting individually. It essentially involves sharing of the total work. This is by itself a great advantage.

In specific terms the advantages that flow may be the following:

(i) Sharing of expertise.
(ii) Advantage of mutual consultation.
(iii) Lower workload.
(iv) Better quality of performance.
(v) Improved service to the client.
(vi) Displacement of the auditor of the company taken over in a takeover often obviated.
(vii) In respect of multi-national companies, the work can be spread using the expertise of the local firms which are in a better position to deal with detailed work and the local laws and regulations.
(viii) Lower staff development costs.
(ix) Lower costs to carry out the work.
(x) A sense of healthy competition towards a better performance.

The general disadvantages may be the following:

(i) The fees being shared.
(ii) Psychological problem where firms of different standing are associated in the joint audit.
(iii) General superiority complexes of some auditors.
(iv) Problems of co-ordination of the work.
(v) Areas of work of common concern being neglected.
(vi) Uncertainty about the liability for the work done.

The Institute of Chartered Accountants of India has issued Standard on Auditing (SA) 299 (Revised), “Joint Audit of Financial Statements” which lays down the principles for effective conduct of joint audit to achieve the overall objectives of the auditor as laid down in SA 200 “Overall Objectives of the Independent Auditor and the conduct of an audit in accordance with Standards on Auditing”. This Standard deals with the special considerations in carrying out audit by joint auditors. It requires that–

(i) the engagement partner and other key members of the engagement team from each of the joint auditors should be involved in planning the audit.

(ii) the joint auditors should jointly establish an overall audit strategy which sets the scope, timing and direction of the audit, and also guides the development of the audit plan.

(iii) before the commencement of the audit, the joint auditors should discuss and develop a joint audit plan. In developing the joint audit plan, the joint auditors should:

1. identify division of audit areas and common audit areas;
2. ascertain the reporting objectives of the engagement;
3. consider and communicate among all joint auditors the factors that are significant in directing the engagement team’s efforts;
(4) consider the results of preliminary engagement activities, or similar engagements performed earlier.

(5) ascertain the nature, timing and extent of resources necessary to accomplish the engagement.

(iv) each of the joint auditors should consider and assess the risks of material misstatement and communicate to other joint auditors.

(v) the joint auditors should discuss and document the nature, timing, and the extent of the audit procedures for (I) common and (II) specific allotted areas of audit to be performed.

(vi) the joint auditors should obtain common engagement letter and common management representation letter.

(vii) the work allocation document should be signed by all the joint auditors and communicated to those charged with governance.

It further states that, in respect of audit work divided among the joint auditors, each joint auditor shall be responsible only for the work allocated to such joint auditor including proper execution of the audit procedures. On the other hand, all the joint auditors shall be jointly and severally responsible for:

(i) the audit work which is not divided among the joint auditors and is carried out by all joint auditors;

(ii) decisions taken by all the joint auditors under audit planning in respect of common audit areas;

(iii) matters which are brought to the notice of the joint auditors by any one of them and there is an agreement among the joint auditors on such matters;

(iv) examining that the financial statements of the entity comply with the requirements of the relevant statutes;

(v) presentation and disclosure of the financial statements as required by the applicable financial reporting framework;

(vi) ensuring that the audit report complies with the requirements of the relevant statutes, applicable Standards on Auditing and other relevant pronouncements issued by ICAI.

In case a joint auditor comes across matters which are relevant to the areas of responsibility of other joint auditors and which deserve their attention, or which require disclosure or require discussion with, or application of judgment by other joint auditors, the said joint auditor shall communicate the same to all the other joint auditors in writing prior to the completion of the audit.

It may be noted that the joint auditors are required to issue common audit report. However, where the joint auditors are in disagreement with regard to the opinion or any matters to be covered by the audit report, they shall express their opinion in a separate
Audit report. In such circumstances, the audit report(s) issued by the joint auditor(s) shall make a reference to each other's audit report(s).

[Note: Student may refer SA 299 (revised) “Joint Audit of Financial Statements” reproduced in “Auditing Pronouncements” for comprehensive knowledge.]

13. Audit of Branch Office Accounts

As per section 128(1) of the Companies Act, 2013, every company shall prepare and keep at its registered office books of account and other relevant books and papers and financial statement for every financial year which give a true and fair view of the state of the affairs of the company, including that of its branch office or offices, if any, and explain the transactions effected both at the registered office and its branches and such books shall be kept on accrual basis and according to the double entry system of accounting.

It may be noted that all or any of the books of account aforesaid and other relevant papers may be kept at such other place in India as the Board of Directors may decide and where such a decision is taken, the company shall, within 7 days thereof, file with the Registrar a notice in writing giving the full address of that other place.

Students may also note that the company may keep such books of account or other relevant papers in electronic mode in such manner as may be prescribed.

Sub-section (2) provides that where a company has a branch office in India or outside India, it shall be deemed to have complied with the provisions of sub-section (1), if proper books of account relating to the transactions effected at the branch office are kept at that office and proper summarised returns periodically are sent by the branch office to the company at its registered office or the other place referred in (1).

Further, sub-section (8) of section 143 of the Companies Act, 2013, prescribes the duties and powers of the company's auditor with reference to the audit of the branch and the branch auditor. Where a company has a branch office, the accounts of that office shall be audited either by the auditor appointed for the company (herein referred to as the company's auditor) under this Act or by any other person qualified for appointment as an auditor of the company under this Act and appointed as such under section 139, or where the branch office is situated in a country outside India, the accounts of the branch office shall be audited either by the company's auditor or by an accountant or by any other person duly qualified to act as an auditor of the accounts of the branch office in accordance with the laws of that country and the duties and powers of the company's auditor with reference to the audit of the branch and the branch auditor, if any, shall be such as may be prescribed:

It may be noted that the branch auditor shall prepare a report on the accounts of the branch examined by him and send it to the auditor of the company who shall deal with it in his report in such manner as he considers necessary.

Further as per rule 12 of the Companies (Audit and Auditors) Rules, 2014, the branch auditor shall submit his report to the company's auditor and reporting of fraud by the auditor shall also extend to such branch auditor to the extent it relates to the concerned branch.
Using the Work of another Auditor: When the accounts of the branch are audited by a person other than the company's auditor, there is need for a clear understanding of the role of such auditor and the company's auditor in relation to the audit of the accounts of the branch and the audit of the company as a whole; also, there is great necessity for a proper rapport between these two auditors for the purpose of an effective audit. In recognition of these needs, the Council of the Institute of Chartered Accountants of India has dealt with these issues in SA 600, “Using the Work of another Auditor”. It makes clear that in certain situations, the statute governing the entity may confer a right on the principal auditor to visit a component and examine the books of account and other records of the said component, if he thinks it necessary to do so. Where another auditor has been appointed for the component, the principal auditor would normally be entitled to rely upon the work of such auditor unless there are special circumstances to make it essential for him to visit the component and/or to examine the books of account and other records of the said component. Further, it requires that the principal auditor should perform procedures to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence, that the work of the other auditor is adequate for the principal auditor's purposes, in the context of the specific assignment. When using the work of another auditor, the principal auditor should ordinarily perform the following procedures:

(a) advise the other auditor of the use that is to be made of the other auditor's work and report and make sufficient arrangements for co-ordination of their efforts at the planning stage of the audit. The principal auditor would inform the other auditor of matters such as areas requiring special consideration, procedures for the identification of inter-component transactions that may require disclosure and the time-table for completion of audit; and

(b) advise the other auditor of the significant accounting, auditing and reporting requirements and obtain representation as to compliance with them.

The principal auditor might discuss with the other auditor the audit procedures applied or review a written summary of the other auditor's procedures and findings which may be in the form of a completed questionnaire or check-list. The principal auditor may also wish to visit the other auditor. The nature, timing and extent of procedures will depend on the circumstances of the engagement and the principal auditor's knowledge of the professional competence of the other auditor. This knowledge may have been enhanced from the review of the previous audit work of the other auditor.

14. Cost Audit

Cost Audit is an audit process for verifying the cost of manufacture or production of any article, on the basis of accounts as regards utilisation of material or labour or other items of costs, maintained by the company.

It is covered by Section 148 of the Companies Act, 2013. The audit conducted under this section shall be in addition to the audit conducted under section 143.

As per section 148 the Central Government may by order specify audit of items of cost in respect of certain companies.
Further, the Central Government may, by order, in respect of such class of companies engaged in the production of such goods or providing such services as may be prescribed, direct that particulars relating to the utilisation of material or labour or to other items of cost as may be prescribed shall also be included in the books of account kept by that class of companies.

In this regard, the Central Government has notified the Companies (Cost Records and Audit) Rules, 2014 which prescribes the classes of companies required to include cost records in their books of account, applicability of cost audit, maintenance of records etc.

**Applicability for Maintenance of Cost Records:** Rule 3 of the Companies (Cost Records and Audit) Rules, 2014 provides the classes of companies, engaged in the production of goods or providing services, having an overall turnover from all its products and services of ₹ 35 crore or more during the immediately preceding financial year, required to include cost records in their books of account. These companies include Foreign Companies defined in sub-section (42) of section 2 of the Act, but exclude a company classified as a Micro enterprise or a Small enterprise including as per the turnover criteria provided under Micro, Small and Medium Enterprises Development Act, 2006. The said rule has divided the list of companies into (A) Regulated sectors and (B) Non-regulated sectors.

**Maintenance of Cost Records:** As per Rule 5 of the Companies (Cost Records and Audit) Rules, 2014, every company under these rules including all units and branches thereof, shall, in respect of each of its financial year, is required to maintain cost records in Form CRA-1. The cost records shall be maintained on regular basis in such manner as to facilitate calculation of per unit cost of production or cost of operations, cost of sales and margin for each of its products and activities for every financial year on monthly or quarterly or half-yearly or annual basis.

Additionally, as per clause (vi) to Paragraph 3 of the CARO, 2016, the auditor has to report whether maintenance of cost records has been specified by the Central Government under section 148(1) of the Companies Act, 2013 and whether such accounts and records have been so made and maintained.

**Applicability of Cost Audit:** Rule 4 of the Companies (Cost Records and Audit) Rules, 2014 states the provisions related to the applicability of cost audit depending on the turnover of the company as follows:

(i) Classes of companies specified under item (A) “Regulated Sectors” are required to get its cost records audited if the overall annual turnover of the company from all its products and services during the immediately preceding financial year is ₹ 50 crore or more and the aggregate turnover of the individual product(s) or service(s) for which cost records are required to be maintained under rule 3 is ₹ 25 crore or more.

(ii) Classes of companies specified under item (B) “Non-Regulated Sectors” are required to get its cost records audited if the overall annual turnover of the company from all its products and services during the immediately preceding financial year is ₹ 100 crore or
more and the aggregate turnover of the individual product(s) or service(s) for which cost records are required to be maintained under rule 3 is ₹ 35 crore or more.

**Who can be Cost Auditor:** The audit shall be conducted by a Cost Accountant who shall be appointed by the Board of such remuneration as may be determined by the members in such manner as may be prescribed.

It may be noted that no person appointed under section 139 as an auditor of the company shall be appointed for conducting the audit of cost records.

It may also be noted that the auditor conducting the cost audit shall comply with the cost auditing standards ("cost auditing standards" mean such standards as are issued by the Institute of Cost Accountants of India, constituted under the Cost and Works Accountants Act, 1959, with the approval of the Central Government).

**Appointment of Cost Auditor:** Rule 6 of the Companies (Cost Records and Audit) Rules, 2014 requires the companies prescribed under the said Rules to appoint an Auditor within 180 days of the commencement of every financial year. However, before such appointment is made, the written consent of the cost auditor to such appointment and a certificate from him or it shall be obtained.

The certificate to be obtained from the cost auditor shall certify that the-

(a) the individual or the firm, as the case may be, is eligible for appointment and is not disqualified for appointment under the Companies Act, 2013, the Cost and Works Accountants Act, 1959 and the rules or regulations made thereunder;

(b) the individual or the firm, as the case may be, satisfies the criteria provided in section 141 of the Companies Act, 2013 so far as may be applicable;

(c) the proposed appointment is within the limits laid down by or under the authority of the Companies Act, 2013; and

(d) the list of proceedings against the cost auditor or audit firm or any partner of the audit firm pending with respect to professional matters of conduct, as disclosed in the certificate, is true and correct.

Every referred company shall inform the cost auditor concerned of his or its appointment as such and file a notice of such appointment with the Central Government within a period of 30 days of the Board meeting in which such appointment is made or within a period of 180 days of the commencement of the financial year, whichever is earlier, through electronic mode, in Form CRA-2, along with the fee as specified in Companies (Registration Offices and Fees) Rules, 2014.

The cost auditor appointed as such shall continue in such capacity till the expiry of 180 days from the closure of the financial year or till he submits the cost audit report, for the financial year for which he has been appointed.

**Removal of Cost Auditor:** The cost auditor may be removed from his office before the expiry
of his term, through a board resolution after giving a reasonable opportunity of being heard to the cost auditor and recording the reasons for such removal in writing.

It may be noted that the Form CRA-2 to be filed with the Central Government for intimating appointment of another cost auditor shall enclose the relevant Board Resolution to the effect.

It may further be noted that the above provisions shall not prejudice the right of the cost auditor to resign from such office of the company.

**Casual Vacancy in the Office of a Cost Auditor:** Any casual vacancy in the office of a Cost Auditor, whether due to resignation, death or removal, shall be filled by the Board of Directors within 30 days of occurrence of such vacancy and the company shall inform the central government in Form CRA-2 within 30 days of such appointment of cost auditor.

**Remuneration of Cost Auditor:** As per rule 14 of the Companies (Audit and Auditors) Rules, 2014-

(a) in the case of companies which are required to constitute an audit committee-

(i) the Board shall appoint an individual, who is a cost accountant, or a firm of cost accountants in practice, as cost auditor on the recommendations of the Audit committee, which shall also recommend remuneration for such cost auditor;

(ii) the remuneration recommended by the Audit Committee under (i) shall be considered and approved by the Board of Directors and ratified subsequently by the shareholders;

(b) in the case of other companies which are not required to constitute an audit committee, the Board shall appoint an individual who is a cost accountant or a firm of cost accountants in practice as cost auditor and the remuneration of such cost auditor shall be ratified by shareholders subsequently.

**Qualification, Disqualification, Rights, Duties and Obligations of Cost Auditor:** The qualifications, disqualifications, rights, duties and obligations applicable to auditors under this Chapter shall, so far as may be applicable, apply to a cost auditor appointed under this section and it shall be the duty of the company to give all assistance and facilities to the cost auditor appointed under this section for auditing the cost records of the company.

**Submission of Cost Audit Report:**

(i) **To the Board of Directors of the Company** - The cost auditor shall submit the cost audit report along with his reservations or qualifications or observations or suggestions, if any, in Form CRA-3. He shall forward his report to the Board of Directors of the company within a period of 180 days from the closure of the financial year to which the report relates and the Board of Directors shall consider and examine such report particularly any reservation or qualification contained therein.

(ii) **To the Central Government** - The company shall within 30 days from the date of receipt of a copy of the cost audit report prepared (in pursuance of a direction issued by Central
Government) furnish the Central Government with such report along with full information and explanation on every reservation or qualification contained therein in Form CRA-4 in Extensible Business Reporting Language (XBRL) format in the manner as specified in the Companies (Filing of Documents and Forms in Extensible Business Reporting language) Rules, 2015 along with fees specified in the Companies (Registration Offices and Fees) Rules, 2014.

Provided that the companies which have got extension of time of holding AGM under section 96 (1) of the Companies Act, 2013, may file form CRA-4 within resultant extended period of filing financial statements under section 137 of the Companies Act, 2013 (As per MCA notification dated 3 December 2018).

If, after considering the cost audit report and the, information and explanation furnished by the company as above, the Central Government is of the opinion, that any further information or explanation is necessary, it may call for such further information and explanation and the company shall furnish the same within such time as may be specified by that Government.

**Duty to Report on Fraud:** The provisions of section 143(12) of the Companies Act, 2013 and the relevant rules on duty to report on fraud shall apply mutatis mutandis to a cost auditor during performance of his functions under section 148 of the Act and these rules.

**Cost Audit Rules Not to Apply in Certain Cases:** The requirement for cost audit under these rules shall not be applicable to a company which is covered under Rule 3, and,

(i) whose revenue from exports, in foreign exchange, exceeds 75% of its total revenue; or

(ii) which is operating from a special economic zone.

(iii) which is engaged in generation of electricity for captive consumption through Captive Generating Plant.

**Penal Provisions in Case of Default:** If any default is made in complying with the provisions of this section,

(a) the company and every officer of the company who is in default shall be punishable in the manner as provided in sub-section (1) of section 147;

(b) the cost auditor of the company who is in default shall be punishable in the manner as provided in sub-sections (2) to (4) of section 147.

15. **Punishment for non-compliance**

Section 147 of the Companies Act, 2013 prescribes following punishments for contravention:

(1) If any of the provisions of sections 139 to 146 (both inclusive) is contravened, the company shall be punishable with fine which shall not be less than twenty-five thousand rupees but which may extend to five lakh rupees and every officer of the company who is in default shall be punishable with imprisonment for a term which may extend to one year or with fine which shall not be less than ten thousand rupees but which may extend to one lakh rupees, or with both.
If an auditor of a company contravenes any of the provisions of section 139, section 143, section 144 or section 145, the auditor shall be punishable with fine which shall not be less than twenty-five thousand rupees but which may extend to five lakh rupees or four times the remuneration of the auditor, whichever is less.

It may be noted that if an auditor has contravened such provisions knowingly or willfully with the intention to deceive the company or its shareholders or creditors or tax authorities, he shall be punishable with imprisonment for a term which may extend to one year and with fine which shall not be less than fifty thousand rupees but which may extend to twenty-five lakh rupees or eight times the remuneration of the auditor, whichever is less.

Where an auditor has been convicted under sub-section (2), he shall be liable to-

(i) refund the remuneration received by him to the company;

(ii) and pay for damages to the company statutory bodies or authorities or to members or creditors of the company for loss arising out of incorrect or misleading statements of particulars made in his audit report.

The Central Government shall, by notification, specify any statutory body or authority of an officer for ensuring prompt payment of damages to the company or the persons under clause (ii) of sub-section (3) and such body, authority or officer shall after payment of damages to the company or persons file a report with the Central Government in respect of making such damages in such manner as may be specified in the said notification.

Where, in case of audit of a company being conducted by an audit firm, it is proved that the partner or partners of the audit firm has or have acted in a fraudulent manner or abetted or colluded in an fraud by, or in relation to or by, the company or its directors or officers, the liability, whether civil or criminal as provided in this Act or in any other law for the time being in force, for such act shall be of the partner or partners concerned of the audit firm and of the firm jointly and severally.

It may be noted that in case of criminal liability of an audit firm, in respect of liability other than fine, the concerned partner(s), who acted in a fraudulent manner or abetted or, as the case may be, colluded in any fraud shall only be liable.

16. Audit report

Management is responsible for the preparation of the financial statements. Management also accepts responsibility for necessary internal controls to enable the preparation of financial statements that are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error.

The purpose of an audit is to enhance the degree of confidence of intended users of the financial statements. The aforesaid purpose is achieved by the expression of an independent reporting
by the auditor as to whether the financial statements exhibit a true and fair view of the affairs of the entity.

Thus, an Audit report is an opinion drawn on the entity’s financial statements to make sure that the records are true and fair representation of the transactions they claim to represent. This involves considering whether the financial statements have been prepared in accordance with an acceptable financial reporting framework applicable to the entity under audit. It is also necessary to consider whether the financial statements comply with the relevant statutory requirements. The main users of audit report are shareholders, members and all other stakeholders of the company.

17. Forming an Opinion on the Financial Statements - Objective of the Auditor

17.1 The objectives of the auditor as per SA 700 (Revised), “Forming An Opinion And Reporting On Financial Statements” are:

(a) To form an opinion on the financial statements based on an evaluation of the conclusions drawn from the audit evidence obtained; and

(b) To express clearly that opinion through a written report.

The auditor shall form an opinion on whether the financial statements are prepared, in all material respects, in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework.

17.2 To form opinion - Auditor to obtain Reasonable assurance

In order to form that opinion, the auditor shall conclude as to whether the auditor has obtained reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements as a whole are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error.

That conclusion shall take into account:

(a) whether sufficient appropriate audit evidence has been obtained;

(b) whether uncorrected misstatements are material, individually or in aggregate;

(c) The evaluations

17.3 Evaluations by the Auditor

The auditor shall evaluate whether the financial statements are prepared in accordance with the requirements of the applicable financial reporting framework.

17.3.1 Qualitative Aspects of the Entity’s Accounting Practices

1. Management makes a number of judgments about the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements.

2. SA 260 (Revised) contains a discussion of the qualitative aspects of accounting practices.
3. In considering the qualitative aspects of the entity’s accounting practices, the auditor may become aware of possible bias in management’s judgments. The auditor may conclude that lack of neutrality together with uncorrected misstatements causes the financial statements to be materially misstated. Indicators of a lack of neutrality include the following:

(i) The selective correction of misstatements brought to management’s attention during the audit.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Correcting misstatements with the effect of increasing reported earnings, but not correcting misstatements that have the effect of decreasing reported earnings.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The combination of several deficiencies affecting the same significant account or disclosure (or the same internal control component) could amount to a significant deficiency (or material weakness if required to be communicated in the jurisdiction). This evaluation requires judgment and involvement of audit executives.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(ii) Possible management bias in the making of accounting estimates.

4. SA 540 addresses possible management bias in making accounting estimates.

Indicators of possible management bias do not constitute misstatements for purposes of drawing conclusions on the reasonableness of individual accounting estimates. They may, however, affect the auditor’s evaluation of whether the financial statements as a whole are free from material misstatement.

17.4 Specific Evaluations by the auditor

In particular, the auditor shall evaluate whether:

(a) The financial statements adequately disclose the significant accounting policies selected and applied;

(b) The accounting policies selected and applied are consistent with the applicable financial reporting framework and are appropriate;

(c) The accounting estimates made by management are reasonable;

(d) The information presented in the financial statements is relevant, reliable, comparable, and understandable;

(e) The financial statements provide adequate disclosures to enable the intended users to understand the effect of material transactions and events on the information conveyed in the financial statements; and

(f) The terminology used in the financial statements, including the title of each financial statement, is appropriate.
Example:

- If an amount or disclosure in the financial statements is under greater scrutiny by users of the financial statements, then a smaller misstatement may be considered more significant.
- A misstatement may be objectively determinable or may involve a degree of subjectivity through estimation, allocation or uncertainty.

17.5 Form of Opinion

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unmodified Opinion:</th>
<th>The auditor shall express an unmodified opinion when the auditor concludes that the financial statements are prepared, in all material respects, in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Modified Opinion:</td>
<td>If the auditor:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(a) concludes that, based on the audit evidence obtained, the financial statements as a whole are not free from material misstatement; or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(b) is unable to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence to conclude that the financial statements as a whole are free from material misstatement,</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- the auditor shall modify the opinion in the auditor’s report in accordance with SA 705.

17.6 Auditor’s Report

The auditor’s report shall be in writing. A written report encompasses reports issued in hard copy and those using an electronic medium.

This SA-700 requires the use of specific headings, which are intended to assist in making auditor’s reports that refer to audits that have been conducted in accordance with SAs more recognizable.

17.6.1 Auditor’s Report for Audits Conducted in Accordance with Standards on Auditing

Basic Elements of an Audit Report are given below:

1. Title: The auditor’s report shall have a title that clearly indicates that it is the report of an independent auditor.

   For example, “Independent Auditor’s Report,” distinguishes the independent auditor’s report from reports issued by others.

2. Addressed: The auditor’s report shall be addressed, as appropriate, based on the circumstances of the engagement. Law, regulation or the terms of the engagement may specify to whom the auditor’s report is to be addressed.
The auditor’s report is normally addressed to those for whom the report is prepared, often either to the shareholders or to those charged with governance of the entity whose financial statements are being audited.

3. Auditor's Opinion: The first section of the auditor's report shall include the auditor's opinion, and shall have the heading “Opinion.”

The Opinion section of the auditor’s report shall also:

(a) Identify the entity whose financial statements have been audited;
(b) State that the financial statements have been audited;
(c) Identify the title of each statement comprising the financial statements;
(d) Refer to the notes, including the summary of significant accounting policies; and
(e) Specify the date of, or period covered by, each financial statement comprising the financial statements.

Expressing an unmodified opinion on financial statements

When expressing an unmodified opinion on financial statements, the auditor’s opinion shall, unless otherwise required by law or regulation, use one of the following phrases, which are regarded as being equivalent:

(a) In our opinion, the accompanying financial statements present fairly, in all material respects, […] in accordance with [the applicable financial reporting framework]; or
(b) In our opinion, the accompanying financial statements give a true and fair view of […] in accordance with [the applicable financial reporting framework].

“Present fairly, in all material respects” or “give a true and fair view”
The phrases “present fairly, in all material respects,” and “give a true and fair view” are regarded as being equivalent.

When the auditor expresses an unmodified opinion, it is not appropriate to use phrases such as “with the foregoing explanation” or “subject to” in relation to the opinion, as these suggest a conditional opinion or a weakening or modification of opinion.

4. Basis for Opinion:

The auditor’s report shall include a section, directly following the Opinion section, with the heading “Basis for Opinion”, that:

(a) States that the audit was conducted in accordance with Standards on Auditing;
(b) Refers to the section of the auditor’s report that describes the auditor’s responsibilities under the SAs;
(c) Includes a statement that the auditor is independent of the entity in accordance with the relevant ethical requirements relating to the audit and has fulfilled the auditor’s other ethical responsibilities in accordance with these requirements.
(d) States whether the auditor believes that the audit evidence the auditor has obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for the auditor's opinion.

5. **Going Concern**: Where applicable, the auditor shall report in accordance with SA 570 (Revised).

6. **Key Audit Matters**: For audits of complete sets of general purpose financial statements of listed entities, the auditor shall communicate key audit matters in the auditor's report in accordance with SA 701.

When the auditor is otherwise required by law or regulation or decides to communicate key audit matters in the auditor's report, the auditor shall do so in accordance with SA 701.

Law or regulation may require communication of key audit matters for audits of entities other than listed entities.

---

**For example, entities characterized in such law or regulation as public interest entities.**

The auditor may also decide to communicate key audit matters for other entities, including those that may be of significant public interest, for example because they have a large number and wide range of stakeholders and considering the nature and size of the business.

---

**Examples of such entities may include financial institutions (such as banks, insurance companies, and pension funds), and other entities such as charities.**

---

7. **Responsibilities for the Financial Statements**: The auditor's report shall include a section with a heading “Responsibilities of Management for the Financial Statements.”

SA 200 explains the premise, relating to the responsibilities of management and, where appropriate, those charged with governance, on which an audit in accordance with SAs is conducted. Management and, where appropriate, those charged with governance accept responsibility for the preparation of the financial statements. Management also accepts responsibility for such internal control as it determines is necessary to enable the preparation of financial statements that are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error. The description of management's responsibilities in the auditor's report includes reference to both responsibilities as it helps to explain to users the premise on which an audit is conducted.

This section of the auditor's report shall describe management's responsibility for:

(a) **Preparing the financial statements** in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework, and for such internal control as management determines is necessary to enable the preparation of financial statements that are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error;[because of the possible effects of fraud on other aspects of the audit, materiality does not apply to management's acknowledgement regarding its responsibility for the design, implementation, and maintenance of internal control (or for establishing and maintaining effective internal control over financial reporting) to prevent and detect fraud.] and
(b) **Assessing the entity’s ability to continue as a going concern** and whether the use of the going concern basis of accounting is appropriate as well as disclosing, if applicable, matters relating to going concern. The explanation of management’s responsibility for this assessment shall include a description of when the use of the going concern basis of accounting is appropriate.

- Auditor cannot conclude that management has provided with all relevant information agreed in the terms of the audit engagement agreement without confirming with management whether such information has been provided.
- When those individuals who have signed the engagement agreement at the start of the audit have left the entity, the auditor would request those who are giving the representations to acknowledge their responsibilities within the letter of representations.
- A management representation as to the amount required for a particular provision is not a substitute for the audit procedures regarding the provision that the auditor would expect to perform.

**Periods covered by the letter:** The auditor to obtain representations for all financial statements and periods referred to in our auditor’s report. Auditor would obtain a specific representation if a restatement is made to correct a material misstatement in the prior period financial statements that affects the comparative information in the financial statements. If current management was not present during all periods covered by auditor’s report, he still would obtain written representations from current management on all such periods.

**SA 210 requires the auditor to agree management’s responsibilities in an engagement letter or other suitable form of written agreement.**

**Oversight of the financial reporting process:** This section of the auditor’s report shall also identify those responsible for the oversight of the financial reporting process, when those responsible for such oversight are different from Management. In this case, the heading of this section shall also refer to “Those Charged with Governance”

8. **Auditor’s Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Statements:**

The auditor’s report shall include a section with the heading “Auditor’s Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Statements.”

This section of the auditor’s report shall:

(a) State that the objectives of the auditor are to:

   (i) **Obtain reasonable assurance** about whether the financial statements as a whole are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error; and

   (ii) **Issue an auditor’s report** that includes the auditor’s opinion.
(b) State that reasonable assurance is a high level of assurance, but is not a guarantee that an audit conducted in accordance with SAs will always detect a material misstatement when it exists; and

c) State that misstatements can arise from fraud or error, and either:

(i) Describe that they are considered material if, individually or in the aggregate, they could reasonably be expected to influence the economic decisions of users taken on the basis of these financial statements; or

(ii) Provide a definition or description of materiality in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework.

The Auditor’s Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Statements section of the auditor’s report shall further:

(a) State that, as part of an audit in accordance with SAs, the auditor exercises professional judgment and maintains professional skepticism throughout the audit; and

(b) Describe an audit by stating that the auditor’s responsibilities are:

(i) To identify and assess the risks of material misstatement of the financial statements, whether due to fraud or error; to design and perform audit procedures responsive to those risks; and to obtain audit evidence that is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for the auditor’s opinion. The risk of not detecting a material misstatement resulting from fraud is higher than for one resulting from error, as fraud may involve collusion, forgery, intentional omissions, misrepresentations, or the override of internal control.

| 1. To identify and assess the risks of material misstatement of the financial statements. |
| 2. to design and perform audit procedures in response to those risks |
| 3. to obtain sufficient and appropriate audit evidence. |

(ii) To obtain an understanding of internal control relevant to the audit in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances.

(iii) To evaluate the appropriateness of accounting policies used and the reasonableness of accounting estimates and related disclosures made by management.

(iv) To conclude on the appropriateness of management’s use of the going concern basis of accounting and, based on the audit evidence obtained, whether a material uncertainty exists related to events or conditions that may cast significant doubt on the entity’s ability to continue as a going concern.

The Auditor’s Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Statements section of the auditor’s report also shall:
(a) State that the auditor communicates with those charged with governance regarding, among other matters, the planned scope and timing of the audit and significant audit findings, including any significant deficiencies in internal control that the auditor identifies during the audit;

(b) For audits of financial statements of listed entities, state that the auditor provides those charged with governance with a statement that the auditor has complied with relevant ethical requirements regarding independence and communicate with them all relationships and other matters that may reasonably be thought to bear on the auditor’s independence, and where applicable, related safeguards; and

(c) For audits of financial statements of listed entities and any other entities for which key audit matters are communicated in accordance with SA 701, state that, from the matters communicated with those charged with governance, the auditor determines those matters that were of most significance in the audit of the financial statements of the current period and are therefore the key audit matters. The auditor describes these matters in the auditor’s report unless law or regulation precludes public disclosure.

9. Location of the description of the auditor’s responsibilities for the audit of the financial statements: The description of the auditor’s responsibilities for the audit of the financial statements shall be included:

   (a) Within the body of the auditor’s report;
   
   (b) Within an appendix to the auditor’s report, in which case the auditor’s report shall include a reference to the location of the appendix; or
   
   (c) By a specific reference within the auditor’s report to the location of such a description on a website of an appropriate authority, where law, regulation or national auditing standards expressly permit the auditor to do so.

**ILLUSTRATION**

The following is an illustration of how such a reference to an appendix could be made in the auditor’s report:

**Auditor’s Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Statements**

Our objectives are to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements as a whole are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error, and to issue an auditor’s report that includes our opinion. Reasonable assurance is a high level of assurance, but is not a guarantee that an audit conducted in accordance with SAs will always detect a material misstatement when it exists. Misstatements can arise from fraud or error and are considered material if, individually or in the aggregate, they could reasonably be expected to influence the economic decisions of users taken on the basis of these financial statements.

A further description of our responsibilities for the audit of the financial statements is included in appendix X of this auditor’s report. This description, which is located at [indicate page number or other specific reference to the location of the description], forms part of our auditor’s report.
10. Other Reporting Responsibilities: If the auditor addresses other reporting responsibilities in the auditor’s report on the financial statements that are in addition to the auditor’s responsibilities under the SAs, these other reporting responsibilities shall be addressed in a separate section in the auditor’s report with a heading titled:

“Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements” or otherwise as appropriate to the content of the section, unless these other reporting responsibilities address the same topics as those presented under the reporting responsibilities required by the SAs in which case the other reporting responsibilities may be presented in the same section as the related report elements required by the SAs.

If other reporting responsibilities are presented in the same section as the related report elements required by the SAs, the auditor’s report shall clearly differentiate the other reporting responsibilities from the reporting that is required by the SAs.

If the auditor’s report contains a separate section that addresses other reporting responsibilities, the requirements stated above shall be included under a section with a heading “Report on the Audit of the Financial Statements.” The “Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements” shall follow the “Report on the Audit of the Financial Statements.”

11. Signature of the Auditor: The auditor’s report shall be signed. The report is signed by the auditor (i.e. the engagement partner) in his personal name. Where the firm is appointed as the auditor, the report is signed in the personal name of the auditor and in the name of the audit firm.

The partner/proprietor signing the audit report also needs to mention the membership number assigned by the Institute of Chartered Accountants of India. They also include the registration number of the firm, wherever applicable, as allotted by ICAI, in the audit reports signed by them.

12. Auditor’s Address: The auditor’s report shall name specific location, which is ordinarily the city where the audit report is signed.

13. Date of the Auditor’s Report: The auditor’s report shall be dated no earlier than the date on which the auditor has obtained sufficient appropriate audit evidence on which to base the auditor’s opinion on the financial statements, including evidence that:

(a) All the statements that comprise the financial statements, including the related notes, have been prepared; and
(b) Those with the recognized authority have asserted that they have taken responsibility for those financial statements.

The date of the auditor’s report informs the user of the auditor’s report that the auditor has considered the effect of events and transactions of which the auditor became aware and that occurred up to that date. The auditor’s responsibility for events and transactions after the date of the auditor’s report is addressed in SA 560.
18 Modifications To The Opinion In The Independent Auditor’s Report

Standard on Auditing (SA) 705 “Modifications To The Opinion In The Independent Auditor’s Report” deals with the auditor’s responsibility to issue an appropriate report in circumstances when, in forming an opinion in accordance with SA 700 (Revised) “Forming An Opinion And Reporting On Financial Statements”, the auditor concludes that a modification to the auditor’s opinion on the financial statements is necessary.

This SA also deals with how the form and content of the auditor’s report is affected when the auditor expresses a modified opinion.

18.1 Circumstances When a Modification to the Auditor’s Opinion Is Required

The auditor shall modify the opinion in the auditor’s report when:

(a) The auditor concludes that, based on the audit evidence obtained, the financial statements as a whole are not free from material misstatement; or

(b) The auditor is unable to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence to conclude that the financial statements as a whole are free from material misstatement.

18.2 Objective of the auditor - to express clearly an appropriately modified opinion
As per Standard on Auditing (SA) 705 “Modifications To The Opinion In The Independent Auditor’s Report”, the objective of the auditor is to express clearly an appropriately modified opinion on the financial statements that is necessary when:

(a) The auditor concludes, based on the audit evidence obtained, that the financial statements as a whole are not free from material misstatement; or

(b) The auditor is unable to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence to conclude that the financial statements as a whole are free from material misstatement.

18.3 Types of Modified Opinions

There are three types of modified opinions, namely-

1. A qualified opinion
2. An adverse opinion
3. A disclaimer of opinion.

Qualified Opinion

The auditor, having obtained sufficient appropriate audit evidence, concludes that misstatements are material, but not pervasive.

Adverse Opinion

The auditor shall express an adverse opinion when the auditor, having obtained sufficient appropriate audit evidence, concludes that misstatements, individually or in the aggregate, are both material and pervasive.

Disclaimer of Opinion

The auditor shall disclaim an opinion when he is unable to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence and he concludes that the possible effects on the financial statements of undetected misstatements could be both material and pervasive.

Qualified Opinion

The auditor shall express a qualified opinion when:

(a) The auditor, having obtained sufficient appropriate audit evidence, concludes that misstatements, individually or in the aggregate, are material, but not pervasive, to the financial statements; or

(b) The auditor is unable to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence on which to base the opinion, but the auditor concludes that the possible effects on the financial statements of undetected misstatements, if any, could be material but not pervasive.

Adverse Opinion

The auditor shall express an adverse opinion when the auditor, having obtained sufficient appropriate audit evidence, concludes that misstatements, individually or in the aggregate, are both material and pervasive to the financial statements.
Disclaimer of Opinion

The auditor shall disclaim an opinion when the auditor is unable to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence on which to base the opinion, and the auditor concludes that the possible effects on the financial statements of undetected misstatements, if any, could be both material and pervasive.

The auditor shall disclaim an opinion when, in extremely rare circumstances involving multiple uncertainties, the auditor concludes that, notwithstanding having obtained sufficient appropriate audit evidence regarding each of the individual uncertainties, it is not possible to form an opinion on the financial statements due to the potential interaction of the uncertainties and their possible cumulative effect on the financial statements.

Definition of Pervasive – A term used, in the context of misstatements, to describe the effects on the financial statements of misstatements or the possible effects on the financial statements of misstatements, if any, that are undetected due to an inability to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence.

Pervasive effects on the financial statements are those that, in the auditor’s judgment:

(i) Are not confined to specific elements, accounts or items of the financial statements;
(ii) If so confined, represent or could represent a substantial proportion of the financial statements; or
(iii) In relation to disclosures, are fundamental to users’ understanding of the financial statements.

18.4 Which type of opinion is appropriate?

The decision regarding which type of modified opinion is appropriate depends upon:

(a) The nature of the matter giving rise to the modification, that is, whether the financial statements are materially misstated or, in the case of an inability to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence, may be materially misstated; and

(b) The auditor’s judgment about the pervasiveness of the effects or possible effects of the matter on the financial statements.

The table below illustrates how the auditor’s judgment about the nature of the matter giving rise to the modification, and the pervasiveness of its effects or possible effects on the financial statements, affects the type of opinion to be expressed.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nature of Matter Giving Rise to the Modification</th>
<th>Auditor’s Judgment about the Pervasiveness of the Effects or Possible Effects on the Financial Statements</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Financial statements are materially misstated</td>
<td>Material but Not Pervasive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inability to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence</td>
<td>Qualified opinion</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Qualified opinion</th>
<th>Disclaimer of opinion</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Material but Not Pervasive</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Material and Pervasive</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

© The Institute of Chartered Accountants of India
18.5 Basis for Opinion

When the auditor modifies the opinion on the financial statements, the auditor shall, in addition to the specific elements required by SA 700 (Revised)

(a) Amend the heading “Basis for Opinion” required by para of SA 700 (Revised) to “Basis for Qualified Opinion,” “Basis for Adverse Opinion,” or “Basis for Disclaimer of Opinion,” as appropriate; and

(b) Within this section, include a description of the matter giving rise to the modification.


19.1 Objective of the Auditor as per SA 706

As per SA 706 (Revised) on “Emphasis of Matter Paragraphs and Other Matter Paragraphs In The Independent Auditor’s Report”, the objective of the auditor, having formed an opinion on the financial statements, is to draw users’ attention, when in the auditor’s judgment it is necessary to do so, by way of clear additional communication in the auditor’s report, to:

(a) A matter, although appropriately presented or disclosed in the financial statements, that is of such importance that it is fundamental to users’ understanding of the financial statements; or

(b) As appropriate, any other matter that is relevant to users’ understanding of the audit, the auditor’s responsibilities or the auditor’s report.

Definitions:

| Emphasis of Matter paragraph – A paragraph included in the auditor’s report that refers to a matter appropriately presented or disclosed in the financial statements that, in the auditor’s judgment, is of such importance that it is fundamental to users’ understanding of the financial statements. |
| Other Matter paragraph – A paragraph included in the auditor’s report that refers to a matter other than those presented or disclosed in the financial statements that, in the auditor’s judgment, is relevant to users’ understanding of the audit, the auditor’s responsibilities or the auditor’s report. |

19.2 Emphasis of Matter Paragraphs in the Auditor’s Report

If the auditor considers it necessary to draw users’ attention to a matter presented or disclosed in the financial statements that, in the auditor’s judgment, is of such importance that it is fundamental to users’ understanding of the financial statements, the auditor shall include an Emphasis of Matter paragraph in the auditor’s report provided:

(a) The auditor would not be required to modify the opinion in accordance with SA 705 (Revised) as a result of the matter; and

(b) When SA 701 applies, the matter has not been determined to be a key audit matter to be communicated in the auditor’s report.

© The Institute of Chartered Accountants of India
19.2.1 Separate section for Emphasis of Matter paragraph
When the auditor includes an Emphasis of Matter paragraph in the auditor’s report, the auditor shall:
(a) Include the paragraph within a separate section of the auditor’s report with an appropriate heading that includes the term “Emphasis of Matter”;
(b) Include in the paragraph a clear reference to the matter being emphasized and to where relevant disclosures that fully describe the matter can be found in the financial statements. The paragraph shall refer only to information presented or disclosed in the financial statements; and
(c) Indicate that the auditor’s opinion is not modified in respect of the matter emphasized.

19.3 Other Matter Paragraphs in the Auditor’s Report
If the auditor considers it necessary to communicate a matter other than those that are presented or disclosed in the financial statements that, in the auditor’s judgment, is relevant to users’ understanding of the audit, the auditor’s responsibilities or the auditor’s report, the auditor shall include an Other Matter paragraph in the auditor’s report, provided:
(a) This is not prohibited by law or regulation; and
(b) When SA 701 applies, the matter has not been determined to be a key audit matter to be communicated in the auditor’s report.

19.3.1 Separate section for Other Matter paragraph
When the auditor includes an Other Matter paragraph in the auditor’s report, the auditor shall include the paragraph within a separate section with the heading “Other Matter,” or other appropriate heading.

20. Communicating Key Audit Matters in The Independent Auditor’s Report

| Definition of Key Audit Matters: | Those matters that, in the auditor’s professional judgment, were of most significance in the audit of the financial statements of the current period. Key audit matters are selected from matters communicated with those charged with governance. |

20.1 Purpose of communicating key audit matters
As per SA 701, “Communicating Key Audit Matters in the Auditor’s Report”, the purpose of communicating key audit matters is to enhance the communicative value of the auditor’s report by providing greater transparency about the audit that was performed. Communicating key audit matters provides additional information to intended users of the financial statements to assist them in understanding those matters that, in the auditor’s professional judgment, were of most significance in the audit of the financial statements of the current period. Communicating key audit matters may also assist intended users in understanding the entity and areas of significant management judgment in the audited financial statements.
20.2 Objectives of the auditor regarding Key Audit Matters

As per SA 701, “Communicating Key Audit Matters in The Independent Auditor’s Report”, the objectives of the auditor are to determine key audit matters and, having formed an opinion on the financial statements, communicate those matters by describing them in the auditor’s report.

20.3 Determining Key Audit Matters

The auditor shall determine, from the matters communicated with those charged with governance, those matters that required significant auditor attention in performing the audit. In making this determination, the auditor shall take into account the following:

(a) Areas of higher assessed risk of material misstatement, or significant risks identified in accordance with SA 315.

(b) Significant auditor judgments relating to areas in the financial statements that involved significant management judgment, including accounting estimates that have been identified as having high estimation uncertainty.

(c) The effect on the audit of significant events or transactions that occurred during the period.

The auditor shall determine which of the matters determined in accordance with above stated para were of most significance in the audit of the financial statements of the current period and therefore are the key audit matters.

20.4 Communicating Key Audit Matters

The auditor shall describe each key audit matter, using an appropriate subheading, in a separate section of the auditor’s report under the heading “Key Audit Matters”. The introductory language in this section of the auditor’s report shall state that:

(a) Key audit matters are those matters that, in the auditor’s professional judgment, were of most significance in the audit of the financial statements [of the current period]; and

(b) These matters were addressed in the context of the audit of the financial statements as a whole, and in forming the auditor’s opinion thereon, and the auditor does not provide a separate opinion on these matters.

20.5 Communicating key audit matter- not a substitute for disclosure in the financial statements etc. :

Communicating key audit matters in the auditor’s report is in the context of the auditor having formed an opinion on the financial statements as a whole. Communicating key audit matters in the auditor’s report is not:

(a) A substitute for disclosures in the financial statements that the applicable financial reporting framework requires management to make, or that are otherwise necessary to achieve fair presentation;
(b) A substitute for the auditor expressing a modified opinion when required by the circumstances of a specific audit engagement in accordance with SA 705 (Revised);

(c) A substitute for reporting in accordance with SA 570 when a material uncertainty exists relating to events or conditions that may cast significant doubt on an entity's ability to continue as a going concern; or

(d) A separate opinion on individual matters

In Chapter 5-Vouching, the topic “Payments controlled by the Companies Act, 2013” given at page no. 5.11 has been revised and given hereunder:

In the case of a company, payments or transactions, directly or indirectly, have been controlled/restricted by the Companies Act, 2013 (hereinafter referred as the Act). This may be understood with some of the provisions of the Act as discussed below-

(i) Only such expenses which are incurred related to the business of the company are chargeable to statement of profit and loss. The auditor is, therefore, in terms of section 143(1)(e) of the Act, required to inquire whether personal expenses have been charged to the revenue account. In case of any special comments to the said inquiry, he is also required to report on the same.

(ii) Section 180 of the Act specifically restricts the powers of the Board i.e. the Board of Directors of a company can exercise the following powers but only with the consent of the company by a special resolution, namely -

(a) sell, lease or otherwise dispose of the whole or substantially the whole of the undertaking of the company or where the company owns more than one undertaking, of the whole or substantially the whole of any of such undertakings.

(b) invest otherwise in trust securities the amount of compensation received by it as a result of any merger or amalgamation.

(c) borrow money, where the money to be borrowed, together with the money already borrowed by the company will exceed aggregate of its paid-up share capital and free reserves, apart from temporary loans obtained from the company’s bankers in the ordinary course of business.

It is provided that the acceptance by a banking company, in the ordinary course of its business, of deposits of money from the public, repayable on demand or otherwise, and withdrawable by cheque, draft, order or otherwise, shall not be deemed to be a borrowing of monies by the banking company within the meaning of this clause.

(d) remit, or give time for the repayment of, any debt due from a director.

(iii) Under section 181, the Board of Directors of a company can contribute to the bonafide charitable and other funds any amount in any financial year. However, prior permission of the company in general meeting is required if the aggregate of such contribution exceeds 5% of its average net profits for the three immediately preceding financial years.
Section 182 deals with prohibition and restriction regarding political contributions. According to this section, a government company or any other company which has been in existence for less than three financial years cannot contribute any amount directly or indirectly to any political party. Notwithstanding anything contained in any other provision of this Act, a Company, other than a Government Company and a company which has been in existence for less than three financial years, may contribute any amount directly or indirectly to any political party.

Every company shall disclose in its profit and loss account the total amount contributed by it under this section during the financial year to which the account relates.

The contribution under this section shall not be made except by an account payee cheque drawn on a bank or an account payee bank draft or use of electronic clearing system through a bank account.

Section 183 permits the Board and other person to make contributions to the National Defence Fund or any other Fund approved by the Central Government for the purpose of National Defence to any extent as it thinks fit.

**PART – II: QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS**

**QUESTIONS**

**PART – II A: Multiple Choice Questions**

1. Judging the significance of a matter requires _____of the facts and circumstances.
   (a) objective analysis
   (b) subjective analysis
   (c) Both subjective and objective analysis
   (d) qualitative analysis

2. An important factor in determining the form, content and extent of audit documentation of significant matters is the extent of ________exercised in performing the work and evaluating the results.
   (a) professional skepticism
   (b) professional integrity
   (c) professional judgment
   (d) Professional sincerity
3. Audit evidence is necessary to support the auditor's opinion and report. It is_____ in nature and is primarily obtained from audit procedures performed during the course of the audit.
   (a) cumulative
   (b) regressive
   (c) selective
   (d) objective

4. _____ refer to the audit procedures performed to obtain an understanding of the entity and its environment, including the entity's internal control, to identify and assess the risks of material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error, at the financial statement and assertion levels.
   (a) Audit assessment procedures
   (b) substantive procedures
   (c) test of control
   (d) Risk assessment procedures

5. When more persuasive audit evidence is needed regarding the effectiveness of a control,
   (a) it may be appropriate to increase the extent of testing of the control and reduce the extent of the degree of reliance on controls.
   (b) it may be appropriate to decrease the extent of testing of the control as well as the degree of reliance on controls.
   (c) it may be appropriate to decrease the extent of testing of the control and increase the extent of the degree of reliance on controls.
   (d) it may be appropriate to increase the extent of testing of the control as well as the degree of reliance on controls.

6. When deviations from controls upon which the auditor intends to rely are detected,
   (a) the auditor shall not make any inquiries to understand these matters and their potential consequences
   (b) the auditor shall make specific inquiries to understand these matters and their potential consequences
   (c) the auditor shall make general inquiries to understand these matters and their potential consequences
   (d) the auditor shall make both general as well as specific inquiries to understand these matters and their potential consequences
7. Which of the following statement is correct:
   (a) Substantive analytical procedures are generally more applicable to large volumes of transactions that tend to be predictable over time
   (b) Substantive analytical procedures are generally less applicable to large volumes of transactions that tend to be predictable over time
   (c) Substantive analytical procedures are generally more applicable to small volumes of transactions that tend to be predictable over time
   (d) None of the above

8. If the auditor is unable to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence regarding the opening balances, the auditor shall express:
   (a) a disclaimer opinion
   (b) a qualified opinion
   (c) a qualified opinion or a disclaimer of opinion, as appropriate, in accordance with SA 705.
   (d) unmodified opinion

9. A failure of the confirming party to respond, or fully respond, to a positive confirmation request, or a confirmation request returned undelivered is called-
   (a) Negative confirmation request
   (b) Non-response
   (c) Exception
   (d) Positive confirmation request

10. In case of a company that is required to constitute an Audit Committee under section 177, the committee, and, in cases where such a committee is not required to be constituted, __________, shall take into consideration the qualifications and experience of the individual or the firm proposed to be considered for appointment as auditor and whether such qualifications and experience are commensurate with the size and requirements of the company.
    (a) the board
    (b) any director
    (c) Managing Director
    (d) Whole time director
PART II B – DESCRIPTIVE QUESTIONS

1. State with reason (in short) whether the following statements are true or false:

   (i) **As per Section 139(6), the first auditor of a company, including a Government company, shall be appointed by the Board of Directors within 60 days from the date of registration of the company.**

   (ii) **As per section 140(2) of the Act, the auditor who has resigned from the company need not inform the Registrar of Companies.**

   (iii) **Preconditions for an audit have not been defined in SA 210 “Agreeing the Terms of Audit Engagements.”**

   (iv) **The auditor need not discuss elements of planning with the entity’s management in any case.**

   (v) **Planning is a discrete phase of an audit.**

   (vi) **Subjective examination connotes critical examination and scrutiny of the accounting statements.**

   (vii) **Inquiry alone provides sufficient audit evidence of the absence of a material misstatement at the assertion level and of the operating effectiveness of controls.**

   (viii) **The assessment of risks is a matter capable of precise measurement.**

   (ix) **According to Section 53 of the Companies Act, 2013, a company can issue shares at a discount.**

   (x) **An intangible asset is an identifiable monetary asset.**

**Nature of Auditing**

2. (a) **“Self-revealing Errors are such errors the existence of which becomes apparent in the process of compilation of accounts”. Explain giving examples.**

   (b) **“The auditor should obtain information considered necessary in the circumstances before accepting an engagement with a new client.” Explain. Also mention any four information which assists the auditor in accepting and continuing of relationship with the client as per SA 220.**

3. (a) The process of auditing is such that it suffers from certain limitations, i.e. the limitation which cannot be overcome irrespective of the nature and extent of audit procedures. Explain.

   (b) **“Fraudulent financial reporting involves intentional misstatements including omissions of amounts or disclosures in financial statements to deceive financial statement users.” Discuss.**

4. (a) As part of the risk assessment, the auditor shall determine whether any of the risks identified are, in the auditor’s judgment, a significant risk.
In exercising judgment as to which risks are significant risks, state the factors which shall be considered by the auditor in context of SA-315.

(b) “The purpose of an audit is to enhance the degree of confidence of intended users in the financial statements. This is achieved by the expression of an opinion by the auditor on whether the financial statements are prepared, in all material respects, in accordance with an applicable financial reporting framework.”. Explain stating the objectives of audit as per SA 200.

Basic Concepts in Auditing

5. (a) “Inquiry consists of seeking information of knowledgeable persons, both financial and non-financial, within the entity or outside the entity. Inquiry is used extensively throughout the audit in addition to other audit procedures”. Explain.

(b) The auditor should determine whether the use of external confirmation is necessary to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence to support certain financial statement assertions. Explain stating clearly the meaning of external confirmation. Also mention four situations where external confirmation may be useful for auditors.

6. (a) “The Companies Act, 2013 has enacted specific provisions to give concrete shape to concept of Auditor’s Independence”. Explain.

(b) “Even when information to be used as audit evidence is obtained from sources external to the entity, circumstances may exist that could affect its reliability”. Explain. Also state generalisations about the reliability of audit evidence.

7. (a) Audit evidence includes both information contained in the accounting records underlying the financial statements and other information. Discuss.

(b) Most of the auditor’s work in forming the auditor’s opinion consists of obtaining and evaluating audit evidence. Explain

Preparation for an Audit

8. (a) “The auditor should not agree to a change of engagement where there is no reasonable justification for doing so.” Discuss.

(b) Surya and Chand Ltd is a manufacturing company engaged in the production of miscellaneous electrical goods. Trilochan and Co. has been appointed as the auditors to carry out its audit. Auditor thinks that planning an audit would involve establishing the overall audit strategy for the engagement and developing an audit plan. Also, adequate planning benefits the audit of financial statements in several ways. Analyse and Advise explaining the benefits of adequate planning.

9. “All the disadvantages of audit program may be eliminated by imaginative supervision of the work carried on by the assistants, the auditor must have a receptive attitude as regards the assistants; the assistants should be encouraged to observe matters objectively and
bring significant matters to the notice of supervisor/principal.” Explain stating the advantages and disadvantages of an audit program.

Internal Control

10. (a) While obtaining audit evidence about the effective operation of internal controls, the auditor considers how they were applied, the consistency with which they were applied during the period and by whom they were applied. The concept of effective operation recognises that some deviations may have occurred. Analyse and explain.

(b) The auditor can formulate his entire audit programme only after he has had a satisfactory understanding of the internal control systems and their actual operation. Analyse and explain.

11. (a) As part of the risk assessment, the auditor shall determine whether any of the risks identified are, in the auditor’s judgment, a significant risk.

In exercising judgment as to which risks are significant risks, state the factors which shall be considered by the auditor.

Explain the above in context of SA-315.

(b) The auditor of XYZ Ltd, engaged in FMCG (Fast Moving Consumable Goods) obtains an understanding of the control environment. As part of obtaining this understanding, the auditor evaluates whether:

(i) Management has created and maintained a culture of honesty and ethical behavior; and

(ii) The strengths in the control environment elements collectively provide an appropriate foundation for the other components of internal control.

Advise what is included in control environment. Also explain the elements of control environment.

Vouching & Verification of Assets and Liabilities

12. (a) How will you verify the “Borrowing from Banks”.

(b) “Vouching which has traditionally been the backbone of auditing does not merely involve checking arithmetical accuracy but goes much beyond and aims to check the genuineness as well as validity of transactions contained in accounting records”. Explain.

13. How will you vouch and/or verify the following:

(a) Sale proceeds of Scrap Material.
(b) Trade Marks and Copyrights.
(c) Machinery acquired under Hire-purchase system.
(d) Work-in-progress.

14. “The management has obtained a certificate from an actuary regarding provision of gratuity payable to employees”. Comment as an auditor.

The Company Audit

15. Discuss the following:
   (a) According to Companies Act, 2013, the person appointed as an auditor of the company shall sign the auditor's report in accordance with the relevant provisions of the Act. Explain clearly the relevant provisions relating to signing of report.
   (b) The practice of appointing Chartered Accountants as joint auditors is quite widespread in big companies and corporations. Explain stating the advantages of the joint audit.

16. (a) Discuss the matters to be included in the auditor's report regarding fixed assets and inventories as per CARO, 2016.
   (b) The auditor shall make a report to the members of the company on the accounts examined by him. Explain with reference to relevant provisions of the Companies Act, 2013.

17. (a) The auditor’s report shall include a section, directly following the Opinion section, with the heading “Basis for Opinion”. Explain what is included in this “Basis for Opinion” section.
   (b) “A company may keep books of account or other relevant papers in electronic mode”. Explain.

18. (a) Explain the Director’s responsibility statement in brief.
   (b) Briefly discuss the provisions of the Companies Act, 2013 with regard to issue of shares at a discount.

Special Audits

19. (a) Audit of government expenditure is one of the major components of government audit conducted by the office of C&AG. The basic standards set for audit of expenditure are to ensure that there is provision of funds authorised by competent authority fixing the limits within which expenditure can be incurred. Explain those standards.
   (b) Explain in detail the duties of Comptroller and Auditor General of India.

20. What are the special steps involved in conducting the audit of an Educational Institution?
SUGGESTED ANSWERS / HINTS

ANSWERS - MCQ’s
1. (a)
2. (c)
3. (a)
4. (d)
5. (d)
6. (b)
7. (a)
8. (c)
9. (b)
10. (a)

DESCRIPTIVE ANSWERS
1. (i) **Incorrect:** As per Section 139(6), the first auditor of a company, other than a Government company, shall be appointed by the Board of Directors within 30 days from the date of registration of the company.

(ii) **Incorrect:** As per section 140(2) of the Act, the auditor who has resigned from the company shall file within a period of 30 days from the date of resignation, a statement in the prescribed Form ADT-3 (as per Rule 8 of CAAR) with the company and the Registrar.

(iii) **Incorrect:** As per SA 210 “Agreeing the Terms of Audit Engagements”, preconditions for an audit may be defined as the use by management of an acceptable financial reporting framework in the preparation of the financial statements and the agreement of management and, where appropriate, those charged with governance to the premise on which an audit is conducted.

(iv) **Incorrect:** The auditor may decide to discuss elements of planning with the entity’s management to facilitate the conduct and management of the audit engagement.

(v) **Incorrect:** According to SA-300, “Planning an Audit of Financial Statements”, planning is not a discrete phase of an audit, but rather a continual and iterative process that often begins shortly after (or in connection with) the completion of the previous audit and continues until the completion of the current audit engagement. The auditor shall establish an overall audit strategy that sets the scope, timing and direction of the audit, and that guides the development of the audit plan.
(vi) **Incorrect**: Objective examination connotes critical examination and scrutiny of the accounting statements of the undertaking with a view to assessing how far the statements present the actual state of affairs in the correct context and whether they give a true and fair view about the financial results and state of affairs.

(vii) **Incorrect**: Although inquiry may provide important audit evidence, and may even produce evidence of a misstatement, inquiry alone ordinarily does not provide sufficient audit evidence of the absence of a material misstatement at the assertion level, nor of the operating effectiveness of controls.

(viii) **Incorrect**: The assessment of risks is based on audit procedures to obtain information necessary for that purpose and evidence obtained throughout the audit. The assessment of risks is a matter of professional judgment, rather than a matter capable of precise measurement.

(ix) **Incorrect**: According to Section 53 of the Companies Act, 2013, a company shall not issue shares at a discount, except in the case of an issue of sweat equity shares given under Section 54 of the Companies Act, 2013.

(x) **Incorrect**: An intangible asset is an identifiable non-monetary asset, without physical substance, held for use in the production or supply of goods or services, for rental to others, or for administrative purposes.

2. **(a) Self-revealing Errors**: These are such errors the existence of which becomes apparent in the process of compilation of accounts.

A few illustrations of such errors are given hereunder, showing how they become apparent-

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Omission to post a part of a journal entry to the ledger.</th>
<th>Trial balance is thrown out of agreement.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(i)</td>
<td>Wrong totaling of the Purchase Register.</td>
<td>Control Account (e.g., the Sundry Creditors Account) balances and the aggregate of the balances in the personal ledger will disagree.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ii)</td>
<td>A failure to record in the cash book amounts paid into or withdrawn from the bank.</td>
<td>Bank reconciliation statement will show up error.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(iii)</td>
<td>A mistake in recording amount received from X in the account of Y.</td>
<td>Statements of account of parties will reveal mistake.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

From the above, it is clear that certain apparent errors balance almost automatically by double entry accounting procedure and by following established practices that lie within the accounting system but not being generally considered to be a part of it, like bank reconciliation or sending monthly statements of account for confirmation.
(b) Information which assist the Auditor in accepting and continuing of relationship with Client: As per SA 220, "Quality Control for an Audit of Financial Statements" the auditor should obtain information considered necessary in the circumstances before accepting an engagement with a new client, when deciding whether to continue an existing engagement and when considering acceptance of a new engagement with an existing client. The following information would assist the auditor in accepting and continuing of relationship with the client:

(i) The integrity of the principal owners, key management and those charged with governance of the entity;
(ii) Whether the engagement team is competent to perform the audit engagement and has the necessary capabilities, including time and resources;
(iii) Whether the firm and the engagement team can comply with relevant ethical requirements; and
(iv) Significant matters that have arisen during the current or previous audit engagement, and their implications for continuing the relationship.

3. (a) Inherent Limitations of Audit: As per SA 200 "Overall Objectives of the Independent Auditor and the Conduct of an Audit in Accordance with Standards on Auditing", the objectives of an audit of financial statements, prepared within a framework of recognised accounting policies and practices and relevant statutory requirements, if any, is to enable an auditor to express an opinion on such financial statements. In forming his opinion on the financial statements, the auditor follows procedures designed to satisfy him that the financial statements reflect a true and fair view of the financial position and operating results of the enterprise. The process of auditing, however, is such that it suffers from certain limitations, i.e., the limitation which cannot be overcome irrespective of the nature and extent of audit procedures. The limitations of an audit arise from-

(i) The Nature of Financial Reporting: The preparation of financial statements involves judgment by management in applying the requirements of the entity’s applicable financial reporting framework to the facts and circumstances of the entity. In addition, many financial statement items involve subjective decisions or assessments or a degree of uncertainty, and there may be a range of acceptable interpretations or judgments that may be made. Consequently, some financial statement items are subject to an inherent level of variability which cannot be eliminated by the application of additional auditing procedures.

(ii) The Nature of Audit Procedures: There are practical and legal limitations on the auditor’s ability to obtain audit evidence. For example:

(1) There is the possibility that management or others may not provide, intentionally or unintentionally, the complete information that is relevant to the preparation and presentation of the financial statements or that has
been requested by the auditor.

(2) Fraud may involve sophisticated and carefully organised schemes designed to conceal it. The auditor is neither trained as nor expected to be an expert in the authentication of documents.

(3) An audit is not an official investigation into alleged wrongdoing. Accordingly, the auditor is not given specific legal powers, such as the power of search, which may be necessary for such an investigation.

(iii) **Timeliness of Financial Reporting and the Balance between Benefit and Cost:** The relevance of information, and thereby its value, tends to diminish over time, and there is a balance to be struck between the reliability of information and its cost. There is an expectation by users of financial statements that the auditor will form an opinion on the financial statements within a reasonable period of time and at a reasonable cost, recognising that it is impracticable to address all information that may exist or to pursue every matter exhaustively on the assumption that information is in error or fraudulent until proved otherwise.

(iv) **Other Matters that Affect the Limitations of an Audit:** In the case of certain assertions or subject matters, the potential effects of the limitations on the auditor’s ability to detect material misstatements are particularly significant. Such assertions or subject matters include:

- Fraud, particularly fraud involving senior management or collusion.
- The existence and completeness of related party relationships and transactions.
- The occurrence of non-compliance with laws and regulations.
- Future events or conditions that may cause an entity to cease to continue as a going concern.

Because of the limitations of an audit, there is an unavoidable risk that some material misstatements of the financial statements may not be detected, even though the audit is properly planned and performed in accordance with SAs.

(b) **Fraudulent Financial Reporting:** Fraudulent financial reporting involves intentional misstatements including omissions of amounts or disclosures in financial statements to deceive financial statement users. It can be caused by the efforts of management to manage earnings in order to deceive financial statement users by influencing their perceptions as to the entity’s performance and profitability. Such earnings management may start out with small actions or inappropriate adjustment of assumptions and changes in judgments by management. Pressures and incentives may lead these actions to increase to the extent that they result in fraudulent financial reporting.
In some entities, management may be motivated to reduce earnings by a material amount to minimize tax or to inflate earnings to secure bank financing.

**Fraudulent financial reporting may be accomplished by the following:**

(i) Manipulation, falsification (including forgery), or alteration of accounting records or supporting documentation from which the financial statements are prepared.

(ii) Misrepresentation in or intentional omission from, the financial statements of events, transactions or other significant information.

(iii) Intentional misapplication of accounting principles relating to amounts, classification, manner of presentation, or disclosure.

Fraudulent financial reporting often involves management override of controls that otherwise may appear to be operating effectively.

4. **Identification of Significant Risks:** SA 315 “Identifying and Assessing the Risk of Material Misstatement through understanding the Entity and its Environment” defines ‘significant risk’ as an identified and assessed risk of material misstatement that, in the auditor’s judgment, requires special audit consideration.

As part of the risk assessment, the auditor shall determine whether any of the risks identified are, in the auditor’s judgment, a significant risk. In exercising this judgment, the auditor shall exclude the effects of identified controls related to the risk.

In exercising judgment as to which risks are significant risks, the auditor shall consider at least the following-

(i) Whether the risk is a risk of fraud;

(ii) Whether the risk is related to recent significant economic, accounting or other developments like changes in regulatory environment etc. and therefore requires specific attention;

(iii) The complexity of transactions;

(iv) Whether the risk involves significant transactions with related parties;

(v) The degree of subjectivity in the measurement of financial information related to the risk, especially those measurements involving a wide range of measurement uncertainty; and

(vi) Whether the risk involves significant transactions that are outside the normal course of business for the entity or that otherwise appear to be unusual.

(b) **As per SA-200 “Overall Objectives of the Independent Auditor”, in conducting an audit of financial statements, the overall objectives of the auditor are:**

(1) To obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements as a whole are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error, thereby enabling the auditor to express an opinion on whether the financial
(1) To report on the financial statements, and communicate as required by the SAs, in accordance with an applicable financial reporting framework; and

(2) To report on the financial statements, and communicate as required by the SAs, in accordance with the auditor’s findings.

The purpose of an audit is to enhance the degree of confidence of intended users in the financial statements. This is achieved by the expression of an opinion by the auditor on whether the financial statements are prepared, in all material respects, in accordance with an applicable financial reporting framework. In the case of most general purpose frameworks, that opinion is on whether the financial statements are presented fairly, in all material respects, or give a true and fair view in accordance with the framework. An audit conducted in accordance with SAs and relevant ethical requirements enables the auditor to form that opinion.

5. (a) Inquiry – Audit Procedure to obtain Audit Evidence: Inquiry consists of seeking information of knowledgeable persons, both financial and non-financial, within the entity or outside the entity. Inquiry is used extensively throughout the audit in addition to other audit procedures. Inquiries may range from formal written inquiries to informal oral inquiries. Evaluating responses to inquiries is an integral part of the inquiry process.

Responses to inquiries may provide the auditor with information not previously possessed or with corroborative audit evidence. Alternatively, responses might provide information that differs significantly from other information that the auditor has obtained, for example, information regarding the possibility of management override of controls. In some cases, responses to inquiries provide a basis for the auditor to modify or perform additional audit procedures.

Although corroboration of evidence obtained through inquiry is often of particular importance, in the case of inquiries about management intent, the information available to support management’s intent may be limited. In these cases, understanding management’s past history of carrying out its stated intentions, management’s stated reasons for choosing a particular course of action, and management’s ability to pursue a specific course of action may provide relevant information to corroborate the evidence obtained through inquiry. In respect of some matters, the auditor may consider it necessary to obtain written representations from management and, where appropriate, those charged with governance to confirm responses to oral inquiries.

(b) External Confirmation: As per SA 505 “External Confirmations”, external confirmation is an audit evidence obtained as a direct written response to the auditor from a third party (the confirming party), in paper form, or by electronic or other medium.
The auditor should determine whether the use of external confirmation is necessary to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence to support certain financial statement assertions. Following are examples of situations where external confirmations may be useful:

(i) Bank balances and other information from bankers
(ii) Account receivables balances
(iii) Inventory held by third parties
(iv) Account payable balances.

6. (a) The Companies Act, 2013, has enacted specific provisions to give concrete shape to this vital concept of Auditor's Independence:

(i) The provisions disqualifying certain types of persons from undertaking audit of limited companies.
(ii) Provisions relating to ceiling on the number of audits that can be undertaken by a chartered accountant.
(iii) Provisions requiring special resolution for appointing auditors in certain cases.
(iv) Other provisions on appointment, re-appointment and removal of auditors, are designed with sufficient independence to carry out the audit in the larger interest of shareholders and other users.
(v) Power to qualify his report is yet another weapon in the armoury of the auditor to protect his independence.
(vi) Provisions relating rotation of auditor/audit firm.

(b) Reliability of Audit Evidence: SA 500 on “Audit Evidence” provides that the reliability of information to be used as audit evidence, and therefore of the audit evidence itself, is influenced by its source and its nature, and the circumstances under which it is obtained, including the controls over its preparation and maintenance where relevant. Therefore, generalisations about the reliability of various kinds of audit evidence are subject to important exceptions. Even when information to be used as audit evidence is obtained from sources external to the entity, circumstances may exist that could affect its reliability. For example, information obtained from an independent external source may not be reliable if the source is not knowledgeable, or a management's expert may lack objectivity. While recognising that exceptions may exist, the following generalisations about the reliability of audit evidence may be useful:

(1) The reliability of audit evidence is increased when it is obtained from independent sources outside the entity.

(2) The reliability of audit evidence that is generated internally is increased when the related controls, including those over its preparation and maintenance,
imposed by the entity are effective.

(3) Audit evidence obtained directly by the auditor (for example, observation of the application of a control) is more reliable than audit evidence obtained indirectly or by inference (for example, inquiry about the application of a control).

(4) Audit evidence in documentary form, whether paper, electronic, or other medium, is more reliable than evidence obtained orally (for example, a contemporaneously written record of a meeting is more reliable than a subsequent oral representation of the matters discussed).

(5) Audit evidence provided by original documents is more reliable than audit evidence provided by photocopies or facsimiles, or documents that have been filmed, digitized or otherwise transformed into electronic form, the reliability of which may depend on the controls over their preparation and maintenance.

7. (a) Audit evidence may be defined as the information used by the auditor in arriving at the conclusions on which the auditor’s opinion is based. Audit evidence includes both information contained in the accounting records underlying the financial statements and other information.

Explaining this further, audit evidence includes:-

(1) **Information contained in the accounting records**: Accounting records include the records of initial accounting entries and supporting records, such as checks and records of electronic fund transfers; invoices; contracts; the general and subsidiary ledgers, journal entries and other adjustments to the financial statements that are not reflected in journal entries; and records such as work sheets and spreadsheets supporting cost allocations, computations, reconciliations and disclosures.

(2) **Other information that authenticates the accounting records and also supports the auditor’s rationale behind the true and fair presentation of the financial statements**: Other information which the auditor may use as audit evidence includes, for example minutes of the meetings, written confirmations from trade receivables and trade payables, manuals containing details of internal control etc. A combination of tests of accounting records and other information is generally used by the auditor to support his opinion on the financial statements.

(b) **Audit evidence is necessary to support the auditor’s opinion and report.** It is cumulative in nature and is primarily obtained from audit procedures performed during the course of the audit. It may, however, also include information obtained from other sources such as previous audits. In addition to other sources inside and outside the entity, the entity’s accounting records are an important source of audit evidence. Also, information that may be used as audit evidence may have been prepared using the work of a management’s expert. Audit evidence comprises both information that
supports and corroborates management’s assertions, and any information that contradicts such assertions. In addition, in some cases the absence of information (for example, management’s refusal to provide a requested representation) is used by the auditor, and therefore, also constitutes audit evidence.

Most of the auditor’s work in forming the auditor’s opinion consists of obtaining and evaluating audit evidence. Audit procedures to obtain audit evidence can include inspection, observation, confirmation, recalculation, re-performance and analytical procedures, often in some combination, in addition to inquiry. Although inquiry may provide important audit evidence, and may even produce evidence of a misstatement, inquiry alone ordinarily does not provide sufficient audit evidence of the absence of a material misstatement at the assertion level, nor of the operating effectiveness of controls.

As explained in SA 200, “Overall Objectives of the Independent Auditor and the Conduct of an Audit in Accordance with Standards on Auditing”, reasonable assurance is obtained when the auditor has obtained sufficient appropriate audit evidence to reduce audit risk (i.e., the risk that the auditor expresses an inappropriate opinion when the financial statements are materially misstated) to an acceptably low level. The sufficiency and appropriateness of audit evidence are interrelated.

8. (a) **Acceptance of a Change in Engagement**: An auditor who, before the completion of the engagement, is requested to change the engagement to one which provides a lower level of assurance, should consider the appropriateness of doing so.

A request from the client for the auditor to change the engagement may result from a change in circumstances affecting the need for the service, a misunderstanding as to the nature of an audit or related service originally requested or a restriction on the scope of the engagement, whether imposed by management or caused by circumstances. The auditor would consider carefully the reason given for the request, particularly the implications of a restriction on the scope of the engagement, especially any legal or contractual implications.

If the auditor concludes that there is reasonable justification to change the engagement and if the audit work performed complied with the SAs applicable to the changed engagement, the report issued would be appropriate for the revised terms of engagement. In order to avoid confusion, the report would not include reference to-

(i) the original engagement; or

(ii) any procedures that may have been performed in the original engagement, except where the engagement is changed to an engagement to undertake agreed-upon procedures and thus reference to the procedures performed is a normal part of the report.
The auditor should not agree to a change of engagement where there is no reasonable justification for doing so.

If the terms of the audit engagement are changed, the auditor and management shall agree on and record the new terms of the engagement in an engagement letter or other suitable form of written agreement.

If the auditor is unable to agree to a change of the terms of the audit engagement and is not permitted by management to continue the original audit engagement, the auditor shall-

(i) Withdraw from the audit engagement where possible under applicable law or regulation; and

(ii) Determine whether there is any obligation, either contractual or otherwise, to report the circumstances to other parties, such as those charged with governance, owners or regulators.

(b) Planning an audit: Planning an audit involves establishing the overall audit strategy for the engagement and developing an audit plan. Adequate planning benefits the audit of financial statements in several ways, including the following:

1. Helping the auditor to devote appropriate attention to important areas of the audit.

2. Helping the auditor identify and resolve potential problems on a timely basis.

3. Helping the auditor properly organize and manage the audit engagement so that it is performed in an effective and efficient manner.

4. Assisting in the selection of engagement team members with appropriate levels of capabilities and competence to respond to anticipated risks, and the proper assignment of work to them.

5. Facilitating the direction and supervision of engagement team members and the review of their work.

6. Assisting, where applicable, in coordination of work done by auditors of components and experts.

9. Advantages and Disadvantages of the use of an Audit Programme

The advantages of an audit programme are:

(i) It provides the assistant carrying out the audit with total and clear set of instructions of the work generally to be done.

(ii) It is essential, particularly for major audits, to provide a total perspective of the work to be performed.

(iii) Selection of assistants for the jobs on the basis of capability becomes easier when the work is rationally planned, defined and segregated.
(iv) Without a written and pre-determined programme, work is necessarily to be carried out on the basis of some ‘mental’ plan. In such a situation there is always a danger of ignoring or overlooking certain books and records. Under a properly framed programme, the danger is significantly less and the audit can proceed systematically.

(v) The assistants, by putting their signature on programme, accept the responsibility for the work carried out by them individually and, if necessary, the work done may be traced back to the assistant.

(vi) The principal can control the progress of the various audits in hand by examination of audit programmes initiated by the assistants deputed to the jobs for completed work.

(vii) It serves as a guide for audits to be carried out in the succeeding year.

(viii) A properly drawn up audit programme serves as evidence in the event of any charge of negligence being brought against the auditor. It may be of considerable value in establishing that he exercised reasonable skill and care that was expected of professional auditor.

Some disadvantages are also there in the use of audit programmes but most of these can be removed by taking some concrete steps. The disadvantages are:

(i) The work may become mechanical and particular parts of the programme may be carried out without any understanding of the object of such parts in the whole audit scheme.

(ii) The programme often tends to become rigid and inflexible following set grooves; the business may change in its operation of conduct, but the old programme may still be carried on. Changes in staff or internal control may render precaution necessary at points different from those originally decided upon.

(iii) Inefficient assistants may take shelter behind the programme i.e. defend deficiencies in their work on the ground that no instruction in the matter is contained therein.

(iv) A hard and fast audit programme may kill the initiative of efficient and enterprising assistants.

All these disadvantages may be eliminated by imaginative supervision of the work carried on by the assistants; the auditor must have a receptive attitude as regards the assistants; the assistants should be encouraged to observe matters objectively and bring significant matters to the notice of supervisor/principal.

10. (a) While obtaining audit evidence about the effective operation of internal controls, the auditor considers how they were applied, the consistency with which they were applied during the period and by whom they were applied. The concept of effective operation recognises that some deviations may have occurred. Deviations from prescribed controls may be caused by such factors as changes in key personnel, significant seasonal fluctuations in volume of transactions and human error. When
deviations are detected the auditor makes specific inquiries regarding these matters, particularly, the timing of staff changes in key internal control functions. The auditor then ensures that the tests of control appropriately cover such a period of change or fluctuation.

Based on the results of the tests of control, the auditor should evaluate whether the internal controls are designed and operating as contemplated in the preliminary assessment of control risk. The evaluation of deviations may result in the auditor concluding that the assessed level of control risk needs to be revised. In such cases, the auditor would modify the nature, timing and extent of planned substantive procedures.

Before the conclusion of the audit, based on the results of substantive procedures and other audit evidence obtained by the auditor, the auditor should consider whether the assessment of control risk is confirmed. In case of deviations from the prescribed accounting and internal control systems, the auditor would make specific inquiries to consider their implications. Where, on the basis of such inquiries, the auditor concludes that the deviations are such that the preliminary assessment of control risk is not supported, he would amend the same unless the audit evidence obtained from other tests of control supports that assessment. Where the auditor concludes that the assessed level of control risk needs to be revised, he would modify the nature, timing and extent of his planned substantive procedures.

It has been suggested that actual operation of the internal control should be tested by the application of procedural tests and examination in depth. Procedural tests simply mean testing of the compliance with the procedures laid down by the management in respect of initiation, authorisation, recording and documentation of transaction at each stage through which it flows.

(b) The auditor can formulate his entire audit programme only after he has had a satisfactory understanding of the internal control systems and their actual operation. If he does not care to study this aspect, it is very likely that his audit programme may become unwieldy and unnecessarily heavy and the object of the audit may be altogether lost in the mass of entries and vouchers. It is also important for him to know whether the system is actually in operation. Often, after installation of a system, no proper follow up is there by the management to ensure compliance. The auditor, in such circumstances, may be led to believe that a system is in operation which in reality may not be altogether in operation or may at best operate only partially. This state of affairs is probably the worst that an auditor may come across and he would be in the midst of confusion, if he does not take care.

It would be better if the auditor can undertake the review of the internal control system of client. This will give him enough time to assimilate the controls and implications and will enable him to be more objective in the framing of the audit programme. He will also be in a position to bring to the notice of the management the weaknesses of the system.
and to suggest measures for improvement. At a further interim date or in the course of the audit, he may ascertain how far the weaknesses have been removed.

From the foregoing, it can be concluded that the extent and the nature of the audit programme is substantially influenced by the internal control system in operation. In deciding upon a plan of test checking, the existence and operation of internal control system is of great significance.

A proper understanding of the internal control system in its content and working also enables an auditor to decide upon the appropriate audit procedure to be applied in different areas to be covered in the audit programme.

In a situation where the internal controls are considered weak in some areas, the auditor might choose an auditing procedure or test that otherwise might not be required; he might extend certain tests to cover a large number of transactions or other items than he otherwise would examine and at times he may perform additional tests to bring him the necessary satisfaction.

11. (a) **Identification of Significant Risks:** SA 315 “Identifying and Assessing the Risk of Material Misstatement through understanding the Entity and its Environment” defines ‘significant risk’ as an identified and assessed risk of material misstatement that, in the auditor’s judgment, requires special audit consideration.

As part of the risk assessment, the auditor shall determine whether any of the risks identified are, in the auditor’s judgment, a significant risk. In exercising this judgment, the auditor shall exclude the effects of identified controls related to the risk.

In exercising judgment as to which risks are significant risks, the auditor shall consider at least the following-

(i) Whether the risk is a risk of fraud;

(ii) Whether the risk is related to recent significant economic, accounting or other developments like changes in regulatory environment etc. and therefore requires specific attention;

(iii) The complexity of transactions;

(iv) Whether the risk involves significant transactions with related parties;

(v) The degree of subjectivity in the measurement of financial information related to the risk, especially those measurements involving a wide range of measurement uncertainty; and

(vi) Whether the risk involves significant transactions that are outside the normal course of business for the entity or that otherwise appear to be unusual.

(b) **Control Environment – Component of Internal Control:** The auditor shall obtain an understanding of the control environment. As part of obtaining this understanding, the auditor shall evaluate whether:
Management has created and maintained a culture of honesty and ethical behavior; and

The strengths in the control environment elements collectively provide an appropriate foundation for the other components of internal control.

**What is included in Control Environment?**

The control environment includes:

(i) the governance and management functions and

(ii) the attitudes, awareness, and actions of those charged with governance and management.

(iii) The control environment sets the tone of an organization, influencing the control consciousness of its people.

**Elements of the Control Environment:** Elements of the control environment that may be relevant when obtaining an understanding of the control environment include the following:

(a) **Communication and enforcement of integrity and ethical values** – These are essential elements that influence the effectiveness of the design, administration and monitoring of controls.

(b) **Commitment to competence** – Matters such as management’s consideration of the competence levels for particular jobs and how those levels translate into requisite skills and knowledge.

(c) **Participation by those charged with governance** – Attributes of those charged with governance such as:

- Their independence from management.
- Their experience and stature.
- The extent of their involvement and the information they receive, and the scrutiny of activities.
- The appropriateness of their actions, including the degree to which difficult questions are raised and pursued with management, and their interaction with internal and external auditors.

(d) **Management’s philosophy and operating style** – Characteristics such as management’s:

- Approach to taking and managing business risks.
- Attitudes and actions toward financial reporting.
- Attitudes toward information processing and accounting functions and personnel.
(e) **Organisational structure** – The framework within which an entity’s activities for achieving its objectives are planned, executed, controlled, and reviewed.

(f) **Assignment of authority and responsibility** - Matters such as how authority and responsibility for operating activities are assigned and how reporting relationships and authorisation hierarchies are established.

(g) **Human resource policies and practices** – Policies and practices that relate to, for example, recruitment, orientation, training, evaluation, counselling, promotion, compensation, and remedial actions.

12. **(a) Borrowing from Banks**: Borrowing from banks may be either in the form of overdraft limits or term loans. In each case, the borrowings should be verified as follows-

(i) Reconcile the balances in the overdraft or loan account with that shown in the pass book(s) and confirm the last mentioned balance by obtaining a certificate from the bank showing the balance in the accounts as at the end of the year.

(ii) Obtain a certificate from the bank showing particulars of securities deposited with the bank as security for the loans or of the charge created on an asset or assets of the concern and confirm that the same has been correctly disclosed and duly registered with Registrar of Companies and recorded in the Register of charges.

(iii) Verify the authority under which the loan or draft has been raised. In the case of a company, only the Board of Directors is authorised to raise a loan or borrow from a bank.

(iv) Confirm, in the case of a company, that the restraint contained in Section 180 of the Companies Act, 2013 as regards the maximum amount of loan that the company can raise has not been contravened.

(v) Ascertain the purpose for which loan has been raised and the manner in which it has been utilised and that this has not prejudicially affected the entity.

(b) **Vouching- Backbone of Auditing**: Vouching is a substantive audit procedure which aims at verifying the genuineness and validity of a transaction contained in the accounting records. It involves examination of documentary evidence to support the genuineness of transaction. Thus the object of vouching is not merely to ascertain that money has been paid away but the auditor aims to obtain reasonable assurance in respect of following assertions in regard to transactions recorded in the books of account that –

(i) a transaction is recorded in the proper account and revenue or expense is properly allocated to the accounting period;

(ii) a transaction pertains to entity and took place during the relevant period;

(iii) all transactions which have actually occurred have been recorded;
(iv) all transactions were properly authorised; and
(v) transactions have been classified and disclosed in accordance with recognised accounting policies and practices.

Thus, it is through vouching that the auditor comes to know the genuineness of transactions recorded in the client's books of account wherefrom the financial statements are drawn up.

Apart from genuineness, vouching also helps the auditor to know the regularity and validity of the transaction in the context of the client's business, nature of the organisation and organisational rules.

Thus, the auditor's basic duty is to examine the accounts, not merely to see its arithmetical accuracy but also to see its substantial accuracy and then to make a report thereon.

This substantial accuracy of the accounts and emerging financial statements can be known principally by examination of vouchers which are the primary documents relating to the transactions. If the primary document is wrong or irregular, the whole accounting statement would, in turn, become wrong and irregular. Precisely auditor's role is to see whether or not the financial statements are wrong or irregular, and for this, vouching is simply imperative. Thus, vouching which has traditionally been the backbone of auditing does not merely involve checking arithmetical accuracy but goes much beyond and aims to check the genuineness as well as validity of transactions contained in accounting records.

13. (a) Sale Proceeds of Scrap Material:

(i) Review the internal control on scrap materials, as regards its generation, storage and disposal and see whether it was properly followed at every stage.

(ii) Ascertain whether the organisation is maintaining reasonable records for the sale and disposal of scrap materials.

(iii) Review the production and cost records for determination of the extent of scrap materials that may arise in a given period.

(iv) Compare the income from the sale of scrap materials with the corresponding figures of the preceding three years.

(v) Check the rates at which different types of scrap materials have been sold and compare the same with the rates that prevailed in the preceding year.

(vi) See that scrap materials sold have been billed and check the calculations on the invoices.

(vii) Ensure that there exists a proper procedure to identify the scrap material and good quality material is not mixed up with it.

(viii) Make an overall assessment of the value of the realisation from the sale of scrap material.
materials as to its reasonableness.

(b) **Trade Marks and Copyrights:**

(i) Obtain schedule of Trade Marks and Copyrights duly signed by the responsible officer and scrutinise the same and confirm that all of them are shown in the Balance Sheet.

(ii) Examine the written agreement in case of assignment of Copyrights and Assignment Deed in case of transfer of trade marks. Also ensure that trade marks and copyrights have been duly registered.

(iii) Verify existence of copyright by reference to contract between the author & the entity and note down the terms of payment of royalty.

(iv) See that the value has been determined properly and the costs incurred for the purpose of obtaining the trade marks and copyrights have been capitalised.

(v) Ascertain that the legal life of the trade marks and copyrights have not expired.

(vi) Ensure that amount paid for both the intangible assets is properly amortised having regard to appropriate legal and commercial considerations, as per the principles enunciated under AS 26 on Intangible Assets.

(c) **Machinery Acquired Under Hire-Purchase System:**

(i) Examine the Board’s Minute Book approving the purchase on hire-purchase terms.

(ii) Examine the hire-purchase agreement carefully and note the description of the machinery, cost of the machinery, hire purchase charges, and terms of payment and rate of purchase.

(iii) Assets acquired under Hire Purchase System should be recorded at the full cash value with corresponding liability of the same amount. In case cash value is not readily available, it should be calculated presuming an appropriate rate of interest.

(iv) Hire purchased assets are shown in the balance sheet with an appropriate narration to indicate that the enterprise does not have full ownership thereof. The interest payable along with each installment, whether separately or included therein should be debited to the interest account and not to the asset account.

(d) **Work-in-Progress:** The audit procedures regarding work-in-progress are similar to those used for raw materials and finished goods. However, the auditor has to carefully assess the stage of completion of the work-in-progress for assessing the appropriateness of its valuation. For this purpose, the auditor may examine the production/costing records (i.e., cost sheets), hold discussions with the personnel concerned, and obtain expert opinion, where necessary. The auditor may advise his
client that where possible the work-in-progress should be reduced to the minimum before the closing date. Cost sheets of work-in-progress should be verified as follows:

(i) Ascertain that the cost sheets are duly attested by the works engineer and works manager.

(ii) Test the correctness of the cost as disclosed by the cost records by verification of quantities and cost of materials, wages and other charges included in the cost sheets by reference to the records maintained in respect thereof.

(iii) Compare the unit cost or job cost as shown by the cost sheet with the standard cost or the estimated cost expected.

(iv) Ensure that the allocation of overhead expenses had been made on a rational basis.

(v) Compare the cost sheet in detail with that of the previous year. If they vary materially, investigate the cause thereof.

(vi) Ensure that the Work-in-Progress as at Balance Sheet date has been appropriately disclosed in Balance Sheet as per the requirements of Part I of Schedule III of the Companies Act, 2013.

14. **Certificate from a Management's Expert:** The computation of gratuity liability payable to employees is dependent upon several factors such as age of the employee, expected span of service in the organisation, life expectancy of the employee, prevailing economic environment, etc. Thus, it gives rise to uncertainty in the determination of provisions of liabilities. Under such circumstances, the management is required to make an assessment and estimate the amount of provision. In view of this, the management may engage an expert in the field to assist them in arriving at fair estimation of the liability. Therefore, it is an accepted auditing practice to use the work of a management’s expert. SA 500 on “Audit Evidence” also states that the preparation of an entity’s financial statements may require expertise in a field other than accounting or auditing, such as actuarial calculations, valuations, or engineering data. The entity may employ or engage experts in these fields to obtain the needed expertise to prepare the financial statements. It further requires the auditor to evaluate the competence, capabilities and objectivity of that expert; obtain an understanding of the work of that expert; and evaluate the appropriateness of that expert’s work as audit evidence for the relevant assertion, to conclude whether or not to rely upon such a certificate obtained by the management from the actuary. Therefore, the auditor must follow the requirements of SA 500 before relying upon the certificate obtained by the management from the actuary.

15. (a) **Duty to Sign the Audit Report:** As per section 145 of the Companies Act, 2013, the person appointed as an auditor of the company shall sign the auditor’s report or sign or certify any other document of the company, in accordance with the provisions of section 141(2).
Section 141(2) of the Companies Act, 2013 states that where a firm including a limited liability partnership is appointed as an auditor of a company, only the partners who are chartered accountants shall be authorised to act and sign on behalf of the firm.

The qualifications, observations or comments on financial transactions or matters, which have any adverse effect on the functioning of the company mentioned in the auditor's report shall be read before the company in general meeting.

(b) Joint Audit: The practice of appointing Chartered Accountants as joint auditors is quite widespread in big companies and corporations. Joint audit basically implies pooling together the resources and expertise of more than one firm of auditors to render an expert job in a given time period which may be difficult to accomplish individually. It essentially involves sharing of the total work. This is by itself a great advantage.

In specific terms the advantages that flow may be the following:

(i) Sharing of expertise.
(ii) Advantage of mutual consultation.
(iii) Lower workload.
(iv) Better quality of performance.
(v) Improved service to the client.
(vi) Displacement of the auditor of the company taken over in a takeover often obviated.
(vii) In respect of multi-national companies, the work can be spread using the expertise of the local firms which are in a better position to deal with detailed work and the local laws and regulations.
(viii) Lower staff development costs.
(ix) Lower costs to carry out the work.
(x) A sense of healthy competition towards a better performance.

16. (a) Matters to be included in the auditor's report- fixed assets and inventories (CARO, 2016) - The auditor's report on the accounts of a company to which this Order applies shall include a statement on the following matters, namely:-

(i) (a) whether the company is maintaining proper records showing full particulars, including quantitative details and situation of fixed assets;

(b) whether these fixed assets have been physically verified by the management at reasonable intervals; whether any material discrepancies were noticed on such verification and if so, whether the same have been properly dealt with in the books of account;
(c) whether the title deeds of immovable properties are held in the name of the company. If not, provide the details thereof;

(ii) whether physical verification of inventory has been conducted at reasonable intervals by the management and whether any material discrepancies were noticed and if so, whether they have been properly dealt with in the books of account;

(b) **Right to report to the members of the company on the accounts examined by him** – The auditor shall make a report to the members of the company on the accounts examined by him and on every financial statements which are required by or under this Act to be laid before the company in general meeting and the report shall after taking into account the provisions of this Act, the accounting and auditing standards and matters which are required to be included in the audit report under the provisions of this Act or any rules made there under or under any order made under this section and to the best of his information and knowledge, the said accounts, financial statements give a true and fair view of the state of the company’s affairs as at the end of its financial year and profit or loss and cash flow for the year and such other matters as may be prescribed.

17. (a) **Basis for Opinion**: The auditor’s report shall include a section, directly following the Opinion section, with the heading “**Basis for Opinion**”, that:

(i) States that the audit was conducted in accordance with Standards on Auditing;

(ii) Refers to the section of the auditor’s report that describes the auditor’s responsibilities under the SAs;

(iii) Includes a statement that the auditor is independent of the entity in accordance with the relevant ethical requirements relating to the audit and has fulfilled the auditor’s other ethical responsibilities in accordance with these requirements.

(iv) States whether the auditor believes that the audit evidence the auditor has obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for the auditor’s opinion.

(b) **Electronic form of Books of accounts**: Second proviso to section 128(1) read with the Companies (Accounts) Rules, 2014 allows a company to keep its books of account or other relevant papers in electronic mode. However, the books of account and other relevant books and papers maintained in electronic mode shall comply with the following conditions:

(i) the books of account and other relevant books and papers shall remain accessible in India so as to be usable for subsequent reference.

(ii) the books of account and other relevant books and papers shall be retained completely in the format in which they were originally generated, sent or received, or in a format which shall present accurately the information generated, sent or received and the information contained in the electronic
records shall remain complete and unaltered.

(iii) the information received from branch offices shall not be altered and shall be kept in a manner where it shall depict what was originally received from the branches.

(iv) the information in the electronic record of the document shall be capable of being displayed in a legible form.

(v) there shall be a proper system for storage, retrieval, display or printout of the electronic records as the audit committee, if any, or the board may deem appropriate and such records shall not be disposed of or rendered unusable, unless permitted by law.

(vi) the back-up of the books of account and other books and papers of the company maintained in electronic mode, including at a place outside India, if any, shall be kept in servers physically located in India on a periodic basis.

The company is required to intimate to the Registrar on an annual basis at the time of filing of financial statement, the following-

(i) The name of the service provider;

(ii) The internet protocol address of service provider;

(iii) The location of the service provider (wherever applicable);

(iv) Where the books of account and other books and papers are maintained on cloud, such address as provided by the service provider.

18. (a) Director's Responsibility Statement: According to section 134(3)(c) of the Companies Act, 2013, the report of board of directors on annual accounts shall also include a 'Director's Responsibility Statement'. However, the provisions related to Director's Responsibility Statement are provided under section 134(5) of the Companies Act, 2013 which requires to state that-

(i) in the preparation of the annual accounts, the applicable accounting standards had been followed along with proper explanation relating to material departures;

(ii) the directors had selected such accounting policies and applied them consistently and made judgments and estimates that are reasonable and prudent so as to give a true and fair view of the state of affairs of the company at the end of the financial year and of the profit and loss of the company for that period;

(iii) the directors had taken proper and sufficient care for the maintenance of adequate accounting records in accordance with the provisions of this Act for safeguarding the assets of the company and for preventing and detecting fraud and other irregularities;

(iv) the directors had prepared the annual accounts on a going concern basis;
(v) the directors, in the case of a listed company, had laid down internal financial controls to be followed by the company and that such internal financial controls are adequate and were operating effectively. 

Here, the term “internal financial controls” means the policies and procedures adopted by the company for ensuring the orderly and efficient conduct of its business, including adherence to company’s policies, the safeguarding of its assets, the prevention and detection of frauds and errors, the accuracy and completeness of the accounting records, and the timely preparation of reliable financial information; and

(vi) the directors had devised proper systems to ensure compliance with the provisions of all applicable laws and that such systems were adequate and operating effectively.

(b) Issue of Shares at a Discount: According to Section 53 of the Companies Act, 2013, except sweat equity issued as mentioned in section 54, any share issued by a company at a discounted price shall be void.

Where a company contravenes the provisions of this section, the company shall be punishable with fine which shall not be less than one lakh rupees but which may extend to five lakh rupees and every officer who is in default shall be punishable with imprisonment for a term which may extend to six months or with fine which shall not be less than one lakh rupees but which may extend to five lakh rupees, or with both.

19. (a) Government Expenditure Audit: Audit of government expenditure is one of the major components of government audit conducted by the office of C&AG. The basic standards set for audit of expenditure are to ensure that there is provision of funds authorised by competent authority fixing the limits within which expenditure can be incurred. Briefly, these standards are explained below:

(i) Audit against Rules & Orders: The auditor has to see that the expenditure incurred conforms to the relevant provisions of the statutory enactment and is in accordance with the financial rules and regulations framed by the competent authority.

(ii) Audit of Sanctions: The auditor has to ensure that each item of expenditure is covered by a sanction, either general or special, accorded by the competent authority, authorising such expenditure.

(iii) Audit against Provision of Funds: It contemplates that there is a provision of funds out of which expenditure can be incurred and the amount of such expenditure does not exceed the appropriations made.

(iv) Propriety Audit: It is required to be seen that the expenditure is incurred with due regard to broad and general principles of financial propriety. The auditor aims to bring out cases of improper, avoidable, or in fructuous expenditure even though the expenditure has been incurred in conformity with the existing rules.
and regulations. Audit aims to secure a reasonably high standard of public financial morality by looking into the wisdom, faithfulness and economy of transactions.

(v) **Performance Audit:** This involves that the various programmes, schemes and projects where large financial expenditure has been incurred are being run economically and are yielding results expected of them. Efficiency-cum-performance audit, wherever used, is an objective examination of the financial and operational performance of an organisation, programme, authority or function and is oriented towards identifying opportunities for greater economy, and effectiveness.

(b) **Duties of C&AG:** The Comptroller & Auditor General’s (Duties, Powers and Conditions of Service) Act, 1971 lays down duties of the C&AG as under-

(i) **Compile and submit Accounts of Union and States** - The C&AG shall be responsible for compiling the accounts of the Union and of each State from the initial and subsidiary accounts rendered to the audit and accounts offices under his control by treasuries, offices or departments responsible for the keeping of such account.

(ii) **General Provisions Relating to Audit** - It shall be the duty of the C&AG –

(a) to audit and report on all expenditure from the Consolidated Fund of India and of each State and of each Union Territory having a Legislative Assembly and to ascertain whether the moneys shown in the accounts as having been disbursed were legally available for and applicable to the service or purpose to which they have been applied or charged and whether the expenditure conforms to the authority which governs it;

(b) to audit and report all transactions of the Union and of the States relating to Contingency Funds and Public Accounts;

(c) to audit and report on all trading, manufacturing profit and loss accounts and balance-sheets and other subsidiary accounts kept in any department of the Union or of a State.

(iii) **Audit of Receipts and Expenditure** - Where any body or authority is substantially financed by grants or loans from the Consolidated Fund of India or of any State or of any Union Territory having a Legislative Assembly, the Comptroller and Auditor General shall, subject to the provisions of any law for the time being in force applicable to the body or authority, as the case may be, audit all receipts and expenditure of that body or authority and to report on the receipts and expenditure audited by him.

(iv) **Audit of Grants or Loans** - Where any grant or loan is given for any specific purpose from the Consolidated Fund of India or of any State or of any Union Territory having a Legislative Assembly to any authority or body, not being a
foreign State or international organisation, the Comptroller and Auditor General shall scrutinise the procedures by which the sanctioning authority satisfies itself as to the fulfillment of the conditions subject to which such grants or loans were given and shall for this purpose have right of access, after giving reasonable previous notice, to the books and accounts of that authority or body.

(v) **Audit of Receipts of Union or States** - It shall be the duty of the Comptroller and Auditor General to audit all receipts which are payable into the Consolidated Fund of India and of each State and of each Union Territory having a Legislative Assembly and to satisfy himself that the rules and procedures in that behalf are designed to secure an effective check on the assessment, collection and proper allocation of revenue and are being duly observed and to make this purpose such examination of the accounts as he thinks fit and report thereon.

(vi) **Audit of Accounts of Stores and Inventory** - The Comptroller and Auditor General shall have authority to audit and report on the accounts of stores and inventory kept in any office or department of the Union or of a State.

(vii) **Audit of Government Companies and Corporations** - The duties and powers of the Comptroller and Auditor General in relation to the audit of the accounts of government companies shall be performed and exercised by him in accordance with the provisions of the Companies Act, 2013. The comptroller and Auditor-General of India shall appoint the auditor under sub-section (5) or sub-section (7) of section 139 (i.e. appointment of First Auditor or Subsequent Auditor) and direct such auditor the manner in which the accounts of the Government company are required to be audited and thereupon the auditor so appointed shall submit a copy of the audit report to the Comptroller and Auditor-General of India which, among other things, include the directions, if any, issued by the Comptroller and Auditor-General of India, the action taken thereon and its impact on the accounts and financial statement of the company.

20. **The Special Steps Involved in the Audit of an Educational Institution are the following:**

(i) Examine the Trust Deed, or Regulations in the case of school or college and note all the provisions affecting accounts. In the case of a university, refer to the Act of Legislature and the Regulations framed thereunder.

(ii) Read through the minutes of the meetings of the Managing Committee or Governing Body, noting resolutions affecting accounts to see that these have been duly complied with, specially the decisions as regards the operation of bank accounts and sanctioning of expenditure.

(iii) Check names entered in the Students' Fee Register for each month or term, with the respective class registers, showing names of students on rolls and test amount of
fees charged; and verify that there operates a system of internal check which ensures that demands against the students are properly raised.

(iv) Check fees received by comparing counterfoils of receipts granted with entries in the cash book and tracing the collections in the Fee Register to confirm that the revenue from this source has been duly accounted for.

(v) Total up the various columns of the Fees Register for each month or term to ascertain that fees paid in advance have been carried forward and the arrears that are irrecoverable have been written off under the sanction of an appropriate authority.

(vi) Check admission fees with admission slips signed by the head of the institution and confirm that the amount had been credited to a Capital Fund, unless the Managing Committee has taken a decision to the contrary.

(vii) See that free studentship and concessions have been granted by a person authorised to do so, having regard to the prescribed Rules.

(viii) Confirm that fines for late payment or absence, etc., have either been collected or remitted under proper authority.

(ix) Confirm that hostel dues were recovered before students’ accounts were closed and their deposits of caution money refunded.

(x) Verify rental income from landed property with the rent rolls, etc.

(xi) Vouch income from endowments and legacies, as well as interest and dividends from investment; also inspect the securities in respect of investments held.

(xii) Verify any Government or local authority grant with the relevant papers of grant. If any expense has been disallowed for purposes of grant, ascertain the reasons and compliance thereof.

(xiii) Report any old heavy arrears on account of fees, dormitory rents, etc., to the Managing Committee.

(xiv) Confirm that caution money and other deposits paid by students on admission have been shown as liability in the balance sheet and not transferred to revenue.

(xv) See that the investments representing endowment funds for prizes are kept separate and any income in excess of the prizes has been accumulated and invested along with the corpus.

(xvi) Verify that the Provident Fund money of the staff has been invested in appropriate securities.

(xvii) Vouch donations, if any, with the list published with the annual report. If some donations were meant for any specific purpose, see that the money was utilised for the purpose.
(xviii) Vouch all capital expenditure in the usual way and verify the same with the sanction for the Committee as contained in the minute book.

(xix) Vouch in the usual manner all establishment expenses and enquire into any unduly heavy expenditure under any head.

(xx) See that increase in the salaries of the staff have been sanctioned and minuted by the Committee.

(xxi) Ascertain that the system ordering inspection on receipt and issue of provisions, foodstuffs, clothing and other equipment is efficient and all bills are duly authorised and passed before payment.

(xxii) Verify the inventories of furniture, stationery, clothing, provision and all equipment, etc. These should be checked by reference to Inventory Register and values applied to various items should be test checked.

(xxiii) Confirm that the refund of taxes deducted from the income from investment (interest on securities, etc.) has been claimed and recovered since the institutions are generally exempted from the payment of income-tax.

(xxiv) Verify the annual statements of accounts and while doing so see that separate statements of account have been prepared as regards Poor Boys Fund, Games Fund, Hostel and Provident Fund of Staff, etc.
Multiple Choice Questions

1. An aspiring CA in his interview was questioned to provide correct sequence of the following sub-processes that represent Accounting Process Flow. The sub processes are - (1) Journal, (2) Adjusted Trial Balance, (3) Closing Entries, (4) Ledger, (5) Source Document, (6) Trial Balance, (7) Adjustments, and (8) Financial statement. What should be the sequence?
   (a) (1)-(2)-(3)-(4)-(5)-(6)-(7)-(8)
   (b) (5)-(1)-(4)-(6)-(7)-(2)-(3)-(8)
   (c) (1)-(4)-(3)-(5)-(6)-(2)-(8)-(7)
   (d) (5)-(3)-(1)-(2)-(4)-(8)-(7)-(6)

2. Which of the following statement is false?
   (a) It is the size of a computer system that makes it a server.
   (b) Instruction Set is the set of machine code instructions that the processor can carry out.
   (c) The cloud computing environment consists of multiple types of clouds based on their deployment and usage.
   (d) Cache memory is a memory which stores copies of the data from the most frequently used main memory locations.

3. Which of the following statement is true?
   (a) Gateway is a communications processor that boosts or amplifies the signal before passing it to the next section of cable in a network.
   (b) In Star Network Topology, it is difficult to add new nodes and remove existing nodes.
   (c) Vulnerability is defined as an inherent weakness in the design, configuration, or implementation of a network or system that renders it susceptible to a threat.
   (d) In OSI Model, the Application Layer is a hardware layer which specifies mechanical features as well as electromagnetic features of the connection between the devices and the transmission.

4. The different levels of Information Systems used in any enterprise are as follows:
   (i) Management – Level Systems
   (ii) Knowledge - Level Systems
(iii) Strategic – Level Systems
(iv) Operational – Level Systems

Moving from top to bottom in hierarchy, which of the following represents the correct sequence of different levels of Information Systems?

(a) (i) – (ii) – (iii) – (iv)
(b) (iv) – (iii) – (ii) – (i)
(c) (iii) – (iv) – (i) – (ii)
(d) (iii) – (i) – (ii) – (iv)

5. Google App Engine is an example of ____________.
(a) Network as a Service (NaaS)
(b) Platform as a Service (PaaS)
(c) Infrastructure as a Service (IaaS)
(d) Communication as a Service (CaaS)

Descriptive Questions

Chapter 1: Business Process Management & IT

1. A book publisher offered discount to customers based on their mode of purchase and the number of copies ordered as shown below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mode of Purchase</th>
<th>Number of copies ordered</th>
<th>Discount %</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Online</td>
<td>More than 5</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Less than or equal to 5</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offline</td>
<td>More than 10</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Less than or equal to 10</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If Customer name, Customer type, Date of order placed, Number of copies ordered and unit price are input; draw a flowchart to calculate the net amount of the bill and date of purchase for each customer and print it. The above is to be carried out for 50 customers.

2. Research has identified certain factors that are responsible for the success of any Business Process Reengineering (BPR) Project. Discuss them.

Chapter 2: Information Systems and IT Fundamentals

3. For conversion from manual system to automated Information systems, discuss the different activities during the phase of Conversion which can be undertaken under System Development Life Cycle (SDLC)?
4. There are different Service Models that are supported by Cloud Computing. Discuss them.

Chapter 3: Telecommunication and Networks

5. Mr. X started up his own business of Grocery shop at small level. Which is the most suitable tier architecture of Information systems that fits the best to his business requirements? Also, discuss its advantages and disadvantages.

6. The network architecture of the Internet is predominantly expressed by its use of the Internet Protocol Suite, rather than a specific model for interconnecting networks or nodes in the network, or the usage of specific types of hardware links. What do you understand by the term “Protocols”? Discuss them in detail.

Chapter 4: Business Information Systems

7. It is said that there is huge difference between Information and Knowledge yet they have certain similarities. Justify the statement.

8. People are the most valuable asset of an enterprise and substantial time and endeavour has to be spent in managing the human resources. Human Resource Management System (HRMS) refers to the systems and processes at the intersection between Human Resource Management (HRM) and Information Technology. Discuss key modules of HRMS.

Chapter 5: Business Process Automation through Application software

9. You are a senior manager in the Top management of a company X Ltd. and take the responsibility for Information Systems function in the company. List out the major functions performed by your good self and the Top Management under Managerial functions.

10. Consider a case of an organization where the employee’s attendance system is manual. If this process is to be automated, discuss the various steps that will be involved in its automation.

SUGGESTED ANSWERS/HINTS

Multiple Choice Answers

1. (b) (5)-(1)-(4)-(6)-(7)-(2)-(3)-(8)

2. (a) It is the size of a computer system that makes it a server.

3. (c) Vulnerability is defined as an inherent weakness in the design, configuration, or implementation of a network or system that renders it susceptible to a threat.

4. (d) (iii) – (i) – (ii) – (iv)

5. (b) Platform as a Service (PaaS)
Descriptive Answers
1. The required flowchart is given below:

Start

Clear all Working Locations

NOC = 1

Read CNAME, CTYPE, NO_CP, UNT_PR, DOP

If CTYPE = ‘OFF_Ln’

Yes

If NO_CP > 5

No

DISC = 0.15

No

If NO_CP > 10

Yes

DISC = 0.20

No

DISC = 0.05

Yes

DISC = 0.10

AMT = NO_CP * UNT_PR
NAMT = AMT - AMT * DISC

Print CNAME, NAMT, DOP

NOC = NOC + 1

Yes

If NOC <= 50

No

Stop

© The Institute of Chartered Accountants of India
Abbreviations used in the flowchart are as follows:

- **DOP** - Date of order placed
- **CNAME** - Customer Name
- **NO_CP** - Number of Copies
- **UNT_PR** - Unit Price
- **DISC** - Discount
- **AMT** - Total Amount
- **NAMT** - Net Amount
- **NOC** - Number of Customers
- **CTYPE** - Type of the Customer (Can either be Online or Offline[OFF_LN])

2. Research has identified some key factors for Business Process Reengineering (BPR) projects to succeed. These factors are as follows:

   (i) **Organization wide commitment**: Changes to business processes would have a direct impact on processes, organizational structures, work culture, information flows, infrastructure & technologies and job competencies. This requires strong leadership, support and sponsorship from the top management. Top management not only has to recognize the need for change but also has to convince every affected group about the potential benefits of the change to the organization as a whole and secure their commitment.

   (ii) **BPR team composition**: A BPR team is formed which would be responsible to take the BPR project forward and make key decisions and recommendations. The BPR team would include active representatives from top management, business process owners, technical experts and users. The teams must be kept of manageable size to ensure well-coordinated, effective and efficient completion of the entire BPR process.

   (iii) **Business needs analysis**: It is important to identify exactly what current processes need reengineering. This would help determine the strategy and goals for BPR. A series of sessions are held with the process owners and stakeholders and all the ideas would be evaluated to outline and conceptualize the desired business process. The outcome of this analysis would be BPR project plan – identifying specific problem areas, setting goals and relating them to key business objectives. This alignment of the BPR strategy with the enterprise strategy is one of the most important aspects.

   (iv) **Adequate IT infrastructure**: Adequate investment in IT infrastructure in line is of vital importance to successful BPR implementation. An IT infrastructure is a set of hardware, software, networks, facilities, etc. (including all of the information technology), in order to develop, test, deliver, monitor, control or support IT services. Effective alignment of IT infrastructure to BPR strategy would determine the success of BPR efforts.

   (v) **Effective change management**: BPR involves changes in people behavior and culture, processes and technologies. Hence, resistance would be a natural consequence which needs to be dealt with effectively. An effective change management process would consider the current culture to foster a change in the prevailing beliefs, attitudes and behaviors effectively. The success of BPR depends on how effectively management conveys the need for change to the people.
(vi) **Ongoing continuous improvement:** BPR is an ongoing process hence innovation and continuous improvement are key to the successful implementation of BPR.

3. Under Systems Development Life Cycle (SDLC), the major activities that are involved during the phase of Conversion are as follows:
   - **Direct Changeover:** The user stops using the old system one particular day and starts using the new system from thereon, usually over a weekend or during a slack period.
   - **Parallel Conversion:** The old system continues alongside the new system for a few weeks or months.
   - **Phased Conversion:** Used with larger systems that can be broken down into individual modules which can be implemented separately at different times.
   - **Pilot Conversion:** New system will first be used by only a portion of the enterprise, for example at one branch or factory.

4. Mainly, there are five Cloud Computing Service based models. These are given as follows:
   - **Infrastructure as a Service (IaaS):** It is the foundation of cloud services. It provides clients with access to server hardware, storage, bandwidth and other fundamental computing resources. The service is typically paid for on a usage basis. The service may also include dynamic scaling so that if the customer needs more resources than expected, s/he can get them on the fly (probably to a given limit). It provides access to shared resources on need basis, without revealing details like location and hardware to clients.
   - **Software as a Service (SaaS):** It includes a complete software offering on the cloud. Users can access a software application hosted by the cloud vendor on pay-per-use basis. This is a well-established sector. SaaS is a model of software deployment where an application is hosted as a service provided to customers across the Internet by removing the need to install and run an application on a user’s own computer. It is a way for businesses to get the same benefits as commercial software with smaller cost outlay. SaaS can alleviate the burden of software maintenance and support but users relinquish control over software versions and requirements.
   - **Platform as a Service (PaaS):** It provides clients with access to the basic operating software and optional services to develop and use software applications (e.g. database access and payment service) without the need to buy and manage the underlying computing infrastructure. For example, Google App Engine allows clients to run their web applications (i.e. software that can be accessed using a web browser such as Internet Explorer over the internet) on Google’s infrastructure. It has evolved from Software as a Service (SaaS) and Infrastructure as a service (IaaS). The major drawback of Platform as a Service is that it may lock us into the use of a development environment and stack of software components.
Network as a Service (NaaS): It is a category of cloud services where the capability provided to the cloud service user is to use network/transport connecting services. NaaS involves optimization of resource allocation by considering network and computing resources. Some of the examples are: Virtual Private Network, Mobile Network Virtualization etc.

Communication as a Service (CaaS): CaaS has evolved in the same lines as SaaS. CaaS is an outsourced enterprise communication solution that can be leased from a single vendor. The CaaS vendor is responsible for all hardware and software management and offers guaranteed Quality of Service (QoS). It allows businesses to selectively deploy communication devices and modes on a pay-as-you-go, as-needed basis. This approach eliminates the large capital investments. Examples are: Voice over IP (VoIP), Instant Messaging (IM), Collaboration and Videoconferencing application using fixed and mobile devices.

5. For a small business, single tier-architecture is the best choice which has a single computer that contains a database and a front-end (GUI) to access the database. One-tier architecture involves putting all the required components for a software application or technology on a single server or platform. There is one computer which stores all the company's data on a single database. The interface used to interact with the database may be part of the database or another program which ties into the database itself.

Advantages of Single-Tier architecture are as follows:

- A single-tier system requires only one stand-alone computer.
- It also requires only one installation of proprietary software which makes it the most cost-effective system available.

Disadvantages of Single-Tier architecture are as follows:

- It can be used by only one user at a time.
- A single tier system is impractical for an organization which requires two or more users to interact with the organizational data stores at the same time.

6. Protocols: Protocols are software that performs a variety of actions necessary for data transmission between computers. Stated more precisely, protocols are a set of rules for intercomputer communication that have been agreed upon and implemented by many vendors, users and standards bodies to ensure that the information being exchanged between the two parties is received and interpreted correctly. Ideally, a protocols standard allows heterogeneous computers to talk to each other.

At the most basic level, protocols define the physical aspects of communication, such as how the system components will be interfaced and at what voltage levels will be transmitted.

At higher levels, protocols define the way that data will be transferred, such as the establishment and termination of "sessions" between computers and the synchronization
of those transmissions. At still higher levels, protocols can standardize the way data itself is encoded and compressed for transmission.

Thus, we can say that, Network protocols which are essentially software are sets of rules for-
- Communicating timings, sequencing, formatting, and error checking for data transmission.
- Providing standards for data communication.

A protocol defines the following three aspects of digital communication.

(a) **Syntax**: The format of data being exchanged, character set used, type of error correction used, type of encoding scheme (e.g., signal levels) being used.

(b) **Semantics**: Type and order of messages used to ensure reliable and error free information transfer.

(c) **Timing**: Defines data rate selection and correct timing for various events during data transfer.

At the sending computer, protocols –
- (i) Break data down into packets;
- (ii) Add destination address to the packet; and
- (iii) Prepares data for transmission through Network Interface Card (NIC)

At the receiving computer, protocols –
- (i) Take data packets off the cable;
- (ii) Bring packets into computer through Network Interface Card (NIC);
- (iii) Strip the packets off any transmitting information;
- (iv) Copy data from packet to a buffer for reassembly; and
- (v) Pass the reassembled data to the application.

7. **Information** touches all human action – it is repeatedly said that we survive in the ‘Information Age’. Information is an important resource to an organization. It represents an organization’s tangible and intangible resources and all transactions relating to those resources. Information influences the way an organization operates. The right information, if it is delivered to the right person, in the right fashion, and at the right time, can improve and ensure organizational effectiveness and efficiency. The information system is the mechanism used to manage and control the information resource.

Knowledge is power. Knowledge is derived from information. Knowledge represents information with a potential use retained for reference in future decision situations. Information is necessarily subjective. Information must always be set in the context of its recipient. The same data may be interpreted differently by different people, depending on their existing knowledge.
A close and firm link between information and knowledge has always existed.

- Information is piecemeal, fragmented, and particular whereas knowledge is structured, coherent, and often universal.
- Information is timely, transitory, perhaps even short-lived, whereas knowledge is of enduring significance.
- Information is a flow of messages, whereas knowledge is a stock, largely resulting from the flow, in the sense that the “input” of information may affect the stock of knowledge by adding to it, restructuring it, or changing it in any way.
- Information is acquired by being told, whereas knowledge can be acquired by thinking. Thus, new knowledge can be acquired without new information being received.
- Information is “know what” despite the fact that knowledge is “know-how.” Information is “what is” at the same time as knowledge is “what works.” Information that helps achieve an action well again is knowledge. To sum up, data refers to the raw figures, information is essentially data in a context and knowledge is interpreted data/information which will also be very well presented.

8. Some of the key modules of Human Resource Management System (HRMS) are as below:

- **Workforce Management:** Integrated across the strategic Human Capital Management (HCM) solution, Workforce Management provides powerful tools to effectively manage labor rules, ensure compliance, and control labor costs and expenses.
- **Time and Attendance Management:** The time and attendance module gathers standardized time and work related efforts. The most advanced modules provide broad flexibility in data collection methods, labor distribution capabilities and data analysis features. Cost analysis and efficiency metrics are the primary functions.
- **Payroll Management:** This module of the system is designed to automate manual Payroll functions and facilitate salary, deductions etc. calculations, eliminates errors and free up HR staff for more productive tasks. Data is generally fed from the human resources and time keeping modules to calculate automatic deposit and manual cheque writing capabilities. This module can encompass all employee-related transactions as well as integrate with existing financial management systems.
- **Training Management:** Training programs can be entered with future dates which allow managers to track progress of employees through these programs, examine the results of courses taken and reschedule specific courses when needed. The module tracks the trainer or training organization, costs associated with training schedules. The module also tracks training locations, required supplies and equipment and registered attendees. All employees are linked to a skills profile. The skill profile lists the skills brought with them and acquired through training after they were hired. The skills profile is updated automatically through the training module.
Compensation Management: Compensation Management is more than just the means to attract and retain talented employees. In today's competitive labor market, organizations need to fully leverage their human capital to sustain a competitive position. This requires integrating employee processes, information and programs with organizational processes and strategies to achieve optimal organizational results.

Recruitment Management: This module helps in hiring the right people with the right target skills. This module includes processes for managing open positions/requisitions, applicant screening, assessments, selection and hiring, correspondence, reporting and cost analysis.

Personnel Management: The personnel management comprises of HR master-data, personnel administration, recruitment and salary administration.

Organizational Management: Organizational management includes, organizational structure, staffing schedules & job description.

Employee Self Service (ESS): The employee self-service module allows employees to query HR related data and perform some HR transactions over the system. Employees may query their attendance record from the system without asking the information from HR personnel. The module also lets supervisors approve Over Time (O.T.) requests from their subordinates through the system without overloading the task on HR department.

Analytics: The Analytics module enables organizations to extend the value of an HRMS implementation by extracting HR related data for use with other business intelligence platforms. For example, organizations combine HR metrics with other business data to identify trends and anomalies in headcount to better predict the impact of employee turnover on future output.

9. The senior manager who take responsibility for Information Systems function in an organization perform some major functions that are as follows:

- **Planning** – determining the goals of the information systems function and the means of achieving these goals;
- **Organizing** – gathering, allocating, and coordinating the resources needed to accomplish the goals;
- **Leading** – motivating, guiding, and communicating with personnel; and
- **Controlling** – comparing actual performance with planned performance as a basis for taking any corrective actions that are needed.

Top management must prepare two types of information systems plans for the information systems function: **Strategic Plan** and an **Operational Plan**.

- The **Strategic Plan** is the long-run plan covering, say, the next three to five years of operations; and
The Operational Plan is the short-plan covering, say, next one to three years of operations.

Both the plans need to be reviewed regularly and updated as the need arises. The planning depends upon factors such as the importance of existing systems, the importance of proposed information systems, and the extent to which IT has been integrated into daily operations.

10. Various steps of automation are as follows:

- **Step 1: Define why we plan to go for a BPA?**
  The system of recording of attendance being followed is not generating confidence in employees about the accuracy. There have been complaints that salary payouts are not as per actual attendance. It has also created friction and differences between employees, as some feels that other employees have been paid more or their salary has not been deducted for being absent.

- **Step 2: Understand the rules/regulation under which needs to comply with?**
  A number of regulations are applicable to employee attendance including Factories Act 1948, Payment of Wages Act 1936, State laws, etc. This is a compliance requirement and hence, any BPA needs to cater to these requirements.

- **Step 3: Document the process, we wish to automate.**
  The present system includes an attendance register and a register at the security gate. Employees are expected to put their signatures in attendance registers. The register at the gate is maintained by security staff, to mark when an employee has entered. There is always a dispute regarding the time when an employee has entered and what has been marked in the security register. The company policy specifies that an employee coming late by 30 minutes for two days in a month shall have a ½ day salary deduction. There are over-writing in attendance register, leading to heated arguments between human resource department staff and employees. As the time taken to arrive at the correct attendance is large, there is a delay in preparation of salary. The same has already lead to penal action against company by labor department of the state.

- **Step 4: Define the objectives/goals to be achieved implementing BPA**
  The objective for implementing BPA, being:
  - Correct recording of attendance.
  - Timely compilation of monthly attendance so that salary can be calculated and distributed on a timely basis.
  - To ensure compliance with statutes.

- **Step 5: Engage the business process consultant**
  XYZ Limited a consultant of repute has been engaged for the same. The consultant has prior experience and also knowledge about entity’s business.
• **Step 6: Calculate the RoI for project**

The BPA may provide tangible benefits in the form of reduced penalties and intangible benefits which may include:

- Better employee motivation and morale,
- Reduced difference between employees,
- More focus on work rather than salary, and
- Improved productivity.

• **Step 7: Developing the BPA**

Implementing BPA includes would result in the following:

- All employees would be given electronic identity cards.
- The cards would contain details about employees.
- The attendance system would work in the following manner:
  - Software with card reading machine would be installed at the entry gate.
  - Whenever an employee enters or leaves the company, he/she needs to put the card in front of machine.
  - The card reading machine would be linked to the software which would record the attendance of the employee.
  - At the end of month the software would print attendance reports employee-wise.
  - These reports would also point out how many days an employee has reported late in the month.
  - Based on this report monthly attendance is put in the system to generate the monthly salary.

• **Step 8: Testing the BPA**

Before making the process live, it should be thoroughly tested.

The above illustrations are of entities, which have gone for business process automation. There are thousands of processes across the world for which entity have gone for BPA and reaped numerous benefits. These include:

- Tracking movement of goods,
- Sales order processing,
- Customer services departments,
- Inventory management,
- Employee Management System, and
- Asset tracking systems.
Multiple Choice Questions

1. In the questions given below select the best answer out of options (A), (B), (C), or (D):

(a) Consider the following statements:
   i. An opportunity is inherent capacity of an organisation
   ii. Opportunity enables an organisation to consolidate and strengthen its position.
   iii. Growing demand for the company's products is an opportunity.

Which of the above statements correctly explain opportunity:

(A) i and ii
(B) i and iii
(C) ii and iii
(D) i, ii and iii

(b) Which of the following is not part of macro environment?

(A) Fashion
(B) Laws
(C) Internet
(D) Suppliers

(c) Statement that describes an organization's present capabilities, customer focus, activities, and business makeup is:

(A) Business policy
(B) Mission
(C) Strategy
(D) Vision

(d) External risk is on account of _____________ between strategies and the forces in the environment.

(A) Cohesiveness
(B) Inconsistencies
(C) Interdependence
(D) Proximity

© The Institute of Chartered Accountants of India
(e) A merger of two unrelated organisation is:
   (A) Co-generic merger
   (B) Conglomerate merger
   (C) Horizontal merger
   (D) Vertical merger

(f) Face-to-face interaction of sales force with the prospective customers is
   (A) Direct marketing
   (B) Personal Selling
   (C) Promotion
   (D) Publicity

(g) Functional organisation structures are _________ in nature with _______ cost.
   Select right combination to fill in the blank.
   (A) Complex, low
   (B) Complex, Significant
   (C) Simple, low
   (D) Simple, Significant

(h) Approach of setting goals and measuring productivity based on best industry practices is
   (A) Benchmarking
   (B) Improvement
   (C) Objectives
   (D) Standards

(i) Dog in the BCG Matrix is
   (A) Diversify
   (B) Divest
   (C) Invest
   (D) High growth

(j) Transformational leaders are suited for:
   (A) An organization in turbulent environment.
   (B) A growing organization
   (C) An organization in a stable environment
   (D) Organization that are performing well
Chapter 1: Business Environment
2. Do you think that businesses can succeed in the long with profit as their main objective? What are other objectives of a business?
3. Environment analysis helps in achieving objectives. Discuss. Why should organisations conduct environment analysis?

Chapter 2: Business Policy and Strategic Management
4. What are the major dimensions of strategic decision making?
5. What is Corporate Strategy? How would you argue that ‘corporate strategy ‘ensures the correct alignment of the firm with its environment’?

Chapter 3: Strategic Analysis
6. Explain the concept of Experience Curve and highlight its relevance in strategic management.
7. What are driving forces that may trigger change? Give common driving forces.

Chapter 4: Strategic Planning
8. What is ‘strategic uncertainty’? What is its impact on strategic planning?
9. The Management of a sick company manufacturing various electrical home appliances seeks your advice for an appropriate retrenchment strategy. What will be your advice and why?

Chapter 5: Formulation of Functional Strategy
10. Distinguish between logistic management and supply chain management.
11. An organisation faces several variables that may lead to success or failure of strategy. Do you agree? Give a few examples of marketing decisions.

Chapter 6: Strategy Implementation and Control
12. Explain that successful strategy formulation does not guarantee successful strategy implementation. How strategy formulation is different from strategy implementation?
13. What are the leadership roles that managers play in pushing good strategy execution? Discuss.

Chapter 7: Reaching Strategic Edge
14. What are the various guiding principles of total quality management?
15. To implement six sigma in an organisation is difficult. Explain the critical elements of six sigma.
### SUGGESTED ANSWERS/HINTS

1.  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>(a)</th>
<th>(b)</th>
<th>(c)</th>
<th>(d)</th>
<th>(e)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(f)</td>
<td>B</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(g)</td>
<td>C</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(h)</td>
<td>A</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i)</td>
<td>B</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(j)</td>
<td>A</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Profits cannot be primary objective in long run. While some profits are necessary, organizations need to pursue other objectives such as survival, stability, growth and like. These objectives also change with the changes in the environment. In general, all organizations aim for optimum utilization of resources and economy in operational costs. Some of the other important objectives of a business are as follows:

**Survival**: Survival is a basic, implicit objective of most organizations. While survival is an obvious objective, it gains more value and prominence during the initial stage of the establishment of the enterprise and during general economic adversity.

**Stability**: It is a cautious, conservative objective that is often employed when things are not very conducive. It is a strategy of least resistance in a hostile external environment.

**Growth**: This is a promising and popular objective which is equated with dynamism, vigor, promise and success. Enterprise growth may take one or more of the forms like increase in assets, manufacturing facilities, increase in sales and so on. Growth may take the enterprise along relatively unknown and risky paths.

**Efficiency**: Business enterprises seek efficiency in rationally choosing appropriate means to achieve their goals. In a sense, efficiency is an economic version of the technical objective of productivity – designing and achieving suitable input output ratios of funds, resources, facilities and efforts. Efficiency is a very useful operational objective.

3. Environmental analysis helps to anticipate opportunities and respond to them. It also helps strategists to develop an early warning system to prevent threats or to develop strategies which can turn a threat to the firm’s advantage. It is difficult to anticipate future. To the extent it is estimated by analysis, managerial decisions are likely to be better.

In general, environmental analysis has three basic goals as follows:

- **First**, the analysis should provide an understanding of current and potential changes taking place in the environment. It is important that one must be aware of the existing environment. At the same time one must have a long term perspective about the future too.

- **Second**, environmental analysis should provide inputs for strategic decision making. Mere collection of data is not enough. The information collected must be useful for and used in strategic decision making.

- **Third**, environment analysis should facilitate and foster strategic thinking in organizations—typically a rich source of ideas and understanding of the context within
4. Strategic decisions are different in nature than all other decisions which are taken at various levels of the organization during day-to-day working of the organizations. The major dimensions of strategic decisions are given below:

- **Strategic issues require top-management decisions**: Strategic issues involve thinking in totality of the organizations and also there is lot of risk involved. Hence, problems calling for strategic decisions require to be considered by top management.
- **Strategic issues involve the allocation of large amounts of company resources**: It may require huge financial investment to venture into a new area of business or the organization may require huge number of manpower with new set of skills in them.
- **Strategic issues are likely to have a significant impact on the long term prosperity of the firm**: Generally the results of strategic implementation are seen on a long term basis and not immediately.
- **Strategic issues are future oriented**: Strategic thinking involves predicting the future environmental conditions and how to orient for the changed conditions.
- **Strategic issues usually have major multifunctional or multi-business consequences**: As they involve organization in totality they affect different sections of the organization with varying degree.
- **Strategic issues necessitate consideration of factors in the firm’s external environment**: Strategic focus in organization involves orienting its internal environment to the changes of external environment.

5. Corporate strategy helps an organisation to achieve and sustain success. It is basically concerned with the choice of businesses, products and markets. It is often correlated with the growth of the firm.

   Corporate strategy in the first place ensures the growth of the firm and its correct alignment with the environment. Corporate strategies are concerned with the broad and long-term questions of what businesses the organization is in or wants to be in, and what it wants to do with those businesses. They set the overall direction the organization will follow. It serves as the design for filling the strategic planning gap. It also helps to build the relevant competitive advantages. A right fit between the firm and its external environment is the primary contribution of corporate strategy. Basically the purpose of corporate strategy is to harness the opportunities available in the environment and countering the threats embedded therein. With the help of corporate strategy, organizations match their unique capabilities with the external environment so as to achieve its vision and mission.

6. Experience curve is similar to learning curve which explains the efficiency gained by workers through repetitive productive work. Experience curve is based on the commonly observed phenomenon that unit costs decline as a firm accumulates experience in terms
of a cumulative volume of production. The implication is that larger firms in an industry would tend to have lower unit costs as compared to those of smaller organizations, thereby gaining a competitive cost advantage. Experience curve results from a variety of factors such as learning effects, economies of scale, product redesign and technological improvements in production.

Experience Curve has following features:

- As business organisation grow, they gain experience.
- Experience may provide an advantage over the competition. Experience is a key barrier to entry.
- Large and successful organisation possess stronger “experience effect”.

A typical experience curve may be depicted as follows:

![Experience Curve Diagram]

The concept of experience curve is relevant for a number of areas in strategic management. For instance, experience curve is considered a barrier for new firms contemplating entry in an industry. It is also used to build market share and discourage competition.

7. Industry and competitive conditions of organisation change as environmental forces are in motion. The most dominant forces are called driving forces because they have the biggest influence on what kinds of changes will take place in the industry's structure and competitive environment. Analyzing driving forces has two steps: identifying what the driving forces are and assessing the impact they will have on the industry.

Many events can affect an industry powerfully enough to qualify as driving forces. Some are unique and specific to a particular industry situation, but many drivers of change fall into general category affecting different industries simultaneously. Some of the categories/examples of drivers are:
The internet and the new e-commerce opportunities and threats it breeds in the industry.

- Increasing globalization.
- Changes in the long-term industry growth rate.
- Product innovation.
- Marketing innovation.
- Entry or exit of major forms.
- Diffusion of technical know-how across more companies and more countries.
- Changes in cost and efficiency.

8. Strategic uncertainty has strategic implications and is a key idea in strategy formulation. A typical external analysis will emerge with dozens of strategic uncertainties. To be manageable, they need to be grouped into logical clusters or themes. It is then useful to assess the importance of each cluster in order to set priorities with respect to Information gathering and analysis.

- Sometimes the strategic uncertainty is represented by a future trend or event that has inherent unpredictability. Information gathering and additional analysis will not be able to reduce the uncertainty. In that case, scenario analysis can be employed. Scenario analysis basically accepts the uncertainty as given and uses it to drive a description of two or more future scenarios. Strategies are then developed for each. One outcome could be a decision to create organizational and strategic flexibility so that as the business context changes the strategy will adapt.

- Impact of a strategic uncertainty: Each strategic uncertainty involves potential trends or events that could have an impact on present, proposed, and even potential strategic business units (SBUs). For example, a trend toward natural foods may present opportunities for juices for a firm producing aerated drinks on the basis of a strategic uncertainty. The impact of a strategic uncertainty will depend on the importance of the impacted SBU to a firm. Some SBUs are more important than others. The importance of established SBUs may be indicated by their associated sales, profits, or costs. However, such measures might need to be supplemented for proposed or growth SBUs for which present sales, profits, or costs may not reflect the true value to a firm. Finally, because an information-need area may affect several SBUs, the number of involved SBUs can also be relevant to a strategic uncertainty's impact.

9. A sick company has huge accumulated losses that have eroded its net worth. The electric home appliance company may analyse its various products to take decisions on their individual viability.
Retrenchment becomes necessary for coping with hostile and adverse situations in the environment and when any other strategy is likely to be suicidal. The nature, extent and timing of retrenchment are matters to be carefully decided by management, depending upon each contingency.

**Retrenchment strategy is adopted because:**

- The management no longer wishes to remain in business either partly or wholly due to continuous losses and unviability.
- The environment faced is threatening.
- Stability can be ensured by reallocation of resources from unprofitable to profitable businesses.

Retrenchment grand strategy is followed when an organization substantially reduces the scope of its activity. This is done through an attempt to find out the problem areas and diagnose the causes of the problems. Next, steps are taken to solve the problems. These steps result in different kinds of retrenchment strategies.

**Turnaround strategy:** If the organization chooses to transform itself into a leaner structure and focuses on ways and means to reverse the process of decline, it adopts a turnaround strategy. It may try to reduce costs, eliminate unprofitable outputs, generate revenue, improve coordination, better control, and so on. It may also involve changes in top management and reorienting leadership.

**Divestment Strategy:** Divestment strategy involves the sale or liquidation of a portion of business, or a major division, profit centre or SBU. Divestment is usually a part of rehabilitation or restructuring plan and is adopted when a turnaround has been attempted but has proved to be unsuccessful.

**Liquidation Strategy:** In the retrenchment strategy, the most extreme and unattractive is liquidation strategy. It involves closing down a firm and selling its assets.

It is considered as the last resort because it leads to serious consequences such as loss of employment for workers and other employees, termination of opportunities where a firm could pursue any future activities, and the stigma of failure. Liquidation strategy may be unpleasant as a strategic alternative but when a "dead business is worth more than alive", it is a good proposition.

The management of a sick company manufacturing various electrical home appliances be explained about the each of the above three options of retrenchment strategy with their pros and cons. But the appropriate advice with respect to a particular option of retrenchment strategy will depend on the specific circumstances of each electrical home appliances and management goals of the company.

10. Supply chain management is an extension of logistic management. However, there are differences between the two. Logistical activities typically include management of inbound and outbound goods, transportation, warehousing, handling of material, fulfillment of
orders, inventory management and supply/demand planning. Although these activities also form part of supply chain management, the latter is much broader. Logistic management can be termed as one of its part that is related to planning, implementing, and controlling the movement and storage of goods, services and related information between the point of origin and the point of consumption.

Supply chain management is an integrating function of all the major business activities and business processes within and across organisations. Supply Chain Management is a systems view of the linkages in the chain consisting of different channel partners – suppliers, intermediaries, third-party service providers and customers. Different elements in the chain work together in a collaborative and coordinated manner. Often it is used as a tool of business transformation and involves delivering the right product at the right time to the right place and at the right price.

11. Yes, a business organization faces countless marketing variables that affect the success or failure of strategy implementation. Marketing in recent decades has gained a lot of importance. Marketing constitutes different processes, functions, exchanges and activities that create perceived value by satisfying needs of individuals. Marketing induces or helps in moving people closer to making a decision to purchase and facilitate a sale.

Some examples of marketing decisions that may require special attention are as follows:

- What should be the features of product?
- The distribution network to be used.
- The promotion aspects to cover in communications. The amount and the extent of advertising.
- Whether to limit or enhance the share of business done with a single or a few customers?
- Whether to be a price leader or a price follower?
- Whether to offer a complete or limited warranty?
- Whether to reward salespeople based on straight salary, straight commission, or on a combination of salary/commission?

12. Successful strategy formulation does not guarantee successful strategy implementation. It is always more difficult to do something (strategy implementation) than to say you are going to do it (strategy formulation)! Although inextricably linked, strategy implementation is fundamentally different from strategy formulation. Strategy formulation and implementation can be contrasted in the following ways:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Strategy Formulation</th>
<th>Strategy Implementation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Strategy formulation is positioning forces before the action.</td>
<td>Strategy implementation is managing forces during the action.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Strategy formulation focuses on effectiveness.

Strategy implementation focuses on efficiency.

Strategy formulation is primarily an intellectual process.

Strategy implementation is primarily an operational process.

Strategy formulation requires good intuitive and analytical skills.

Strategy implementation requires special motivation and leadership skills.

Strategy formulation requires coordination among a few individuals.

Strategy implementation requires combination among many individuals.

13. A strategy manager has many different leadership roles to play in the area of strategy, conducive culture, managing resources, problem solver, spokesperson, decision maker, etc. Depending upon the circumstances, he needs to act in authoritarian or participative manner. For the most part, major change efforts have to be top-down and vision-driven. Leading change has to start with diagnosing the situation and then deciding which of several ways to handle it. Managers have five leadership roles to play in pushing for good strategy execution:

i. Staying on top of what is happening, closely monitoring progress, ferreting out issues, and learning what obstacles lie in the path of good execution.

ii. Promoting a culture and team spirit that mobilizes and energizes organizational members to execute strategy in a competent fashion and perform at a high level.

iii. Keeping the organization responsive to changing conditions, alert for new opportunities, bubbling with innovative ideas, and ahead of rivals in developing competitively valuable competencies and capabilities.

iv. Exercising ethics leadership and insisting that the company conduct its affairs like a model corporate citizen.

v. Pushing corrective actions to improve strategy execution and overall strategic performance.

14. Implementing TQM requires organization wide support. There are several principles that guide success of TQM. Various principles that guide the total quality management philosophy are as follows:

◆ A sustained management commitment to quality
◆ Focusing on the customer
◆ Preventing rather than detecting defects
◆ Universal quality responsibility
◆ Quality measurement
15. The critical elements of six sigma can be put into six themes as follows:

- **Theme one** – genuine focus on the customer: Companies launching six sigma often find that how little they really understand about their customers. In six sigma, customer focus becomes the top priority. For example, the measures of six sigma performance begin with the customer. Six sigma improvements are defined by their impact on customer satisfaction and value.

- **Theme two** – data and fact-driven management: Six sigma takes the concept of "management by fact" to a new, more powerful level. Despite the attention paid in recent years to improved information systems, knowledge management, and so on, many business decisions are still being based on opinions, assumptions and gut feeling. Six sigma disciplines begins by clarifying what measures are key to gauging business performance and then gathers data and analyzes key variables. Problems are effectively defined, analyzed, and resolved. Six sigma also helps managers to answer two essential questions to support data-driven decisions and solutions.
  - What data/information is really required?
  - How to use the data/information for maximum benefit?

- **Theme three** – processes are where the action is: Designing products and services, measuring performance, improving efficiency and customer satisfaction and so on. Six sigma positions the process as the key vehicle of success. One of the most remarkable breakthroughs in Six Sigma efforts to date has been convincing leaders and managers. Process may relate to build competitive advantage in delivering value to customers.

- **Theme four** – proactive management: In simple terms, being proactive means acting in advance of events rather than reacting to them. In the real world, though, proactive management means making habits out of what are, too often, neglected business practices: defining ambitious goals and reviewing them frequently, setting clear priorities, focusing on problem prevention rather than fire-fighting, and questioning
why we do things instead of blindly defending them.

- **Theme five – boundaryless collaboration:** "Boundarylessness" is one of Jack Welch's mantras for business success. Years before launching six sigma, GE's chairman was working to break barriers and to improve teamwork up, down, and across organizational lines. The opportunities available through improved collaboration within companies and with vendors and customers are huge. Billions of dollars are lost every day because of disconnects and outright competition between groups that should be working for a common cause: providing value to customers.

- **Theme six – drive for perfection; tolerate failure:** Organizations need to make efforts to achieve perfection and yet at the same time tolerate failure. In essence, though, the two ideas are complementary. No company will get even close to six sigma without launching new ideas and approaches—which always involve some risk. Six sigma cannot be implemented by individuals who are overly cautious and are scared of making mistakes.
Applicability of Standards/Guidance Notes/Legislative Amendments etc. for November, 2019 – Intermediate (IPC) Examination

Paper 5: Advanced Accounting

Accounting Standards
AS 4 : Contingencies and Events occurring after the Balance Sheet Date
AS 5 : Net Profit or Loss for the Period, Prior Period Items and Changes in Accounting Policies
AS 11 : The Effects of Changes in Foreign Exchange Rates
AS 12 : Accounting for Government Grants
AS 16 : Borrowing Costs
AS 19 : Leases
AS 20 : Earnings Per Share
AS 26 : Intangible Assets

Common Note for Paper 1 “Accounting” and Paper 5 “Advanced Accounting”

I. Applicability of the Companies Act, 2013 and other Legislative Amendments for November, 2019 Examination

The relevant notified Sections of the Companies Act, 2013 and legislative amendments including relevant Notifications / Circulars / Rules / Guidelines issued by Regulating Authorities up to 30th April, 2019 will be applicable for November, 2019 Examination.

II. Applicability of Amendments made by the MCA in the Companies (Accounting Standards) Rules, 2006

Amendments made by MCA on 30.3.2016 in the Companies (Accounting Standards) Rules, 2006 are applicable for November, 2019 examination.

III. Non-Applicability of Ind AS for November, 2019 Examination

The Ministry of Corporate Affairs has notified Companies (Indian Accounting Standards) Rules, 2015 on 16th February, 2015, for compliance by certain class of companies. These Ind AS are not applicable for November, 2019 Examination.
### Paper 6: Auditing and Assurance

#### I. Standards on Auditing (SAs)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>S.No</th>
<th>SA</th>
<th>Title of Standard on Auditing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>SA 200</td>
<td>Overall Objectives of the Independent Auditor and the Conduct of an Audit in Accordance with Standards on Auditing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>SA 210</td>
<td>Agreeing the Terms of Audit Engagements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>SA 220</td>
<td>Quality Control for Audit of Financial Statements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>SA 230</td>
<td>Audit Documentation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>SA 240</td>
<td>The Auditor’s responsibilities Relating to Fraud in an Audit of Financial Statements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>SA 250</td>
<td>Consideration of Laws and Regulations in An Audit of Financial Statements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>SA 260</td>
<td>Communication with Those Charged with Governance (Revised)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>SA 265</td>
<td>Communicating Deficiencies in Internal Control to Those Charged with Governance and Management</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>SA 299</td>
<td>Joint Audit of Financial Statements (Revised)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>SA 300</td>
<td>Planning an Audit of Financial Statements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>SA 315</td>
<td>Identifying and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement through Understanding the Entity and its Environment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>SA 320</td>
<td>Materiality in Planning and Performing an Audit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>SA 330</td>
<td>The Auditor’s Responses to Assessed Risks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>SA 402</td>
<td>Audit Considerations Relating to an Entity Using a Service Organization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>SA 450</td>
<td>Evaluation of Misstatements Identified during the Audits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>SA 500</td>
<td>Audit Evidence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>SA 501</td>
<td>Audit Evidence - Specific Considerations for Selected Items</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>SA 505</td>
<td>External Confirmations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>SA 510</td>
<td>Initial Audit Engagements-Opening Balances</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>SA 520</td>
<td>Analytical Procedures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>SA 530</td>
<td>Audit Sampling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>SA 540</td>
<td>Auditing Accounting Estimates, Including Fair Value Accounting Estimates, and Related Disclosures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>SA 550</td>
<td>Related Parties</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>SA 560</td>
<td>Subsequent Events</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
REVISION TEST PAPER

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>SA 570</td>
<td>Going Concern (Revised)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>SA 580</td>
<td>Written Representations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>SA 600</td>
<td>Using the Work of Another Auditor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>SA 610</td>
<td>Using the Work of Internal Auditors (Revised)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>SA 620</td>
<td>Using the Work of an Auditor's Expert</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>SA 700</td>
<td>Forming an Opinion and Reporting on Financial Statements (Revised)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>SA 701</td>
<td>Communication Key Audit Matters in the Independent Auditor’s Report (New)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td>SA 705</td>
<td>Modifications to the Opinion in the Independent Auditor's Report (Revised)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33</td>
<td>SA 706</td>
<td>Emphasis of Matter Paragraphs and Other Matter Paragraphs in the Independent Auditor’s Report (Revised)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34</td>
<td>SA 710</td>
<td>Comparative Information – Corresponding Figures and Comparative Financial Statements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td>SA 720</td>
<td>The Auditor’s Responsibilities Relating to Other Information (Revised)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

II. Applicability of the Companies Act, 2013 and other Legislative Amendments for November 2019 Examination:

(i) Students are expected to be updated with the notifications, circulars and other legislative amendments made up to 6 months prior to the examination. For instance, for November, 2019 examination, significant notifications and circulars issued up to 30th April, 2019 would be relevant.

The relevant notified Sections of the Companies Act, 2013 and legislative amendments including relevant notifications / circulars / rules / guidelines issued by the Regulating Authority up to 30th April, 2019 will be applicable for November, 2019 Examination. It may be noted that the legislative and other amendments applicable for November 2019 Examination would be given as Academic Update in the Revision Test Paper for November 2019 Examination.

(ii) Companies (Auditor’s Report) Order, 2016 issued by Ministry of Corporate Affairs on 29th March, 2016 is applicable for November, 2019 Examination.

List of topic-wise exclusion in the syllabus.

I. Statements

Statement on Reporting under Section 227(1A) of the Companies Act, 1956 (Section 143(1) of the Companies Act, 2013).
II. Guidance Notes

1. Guidance Note on Audit of Inventories.
2. Guidance Note on Audit of Debtors, Loans and Advances.
4. Guidance Note on Audit of Cash and Bank Balances.
5. Guidance Note on Audit of Liabilities.
8. Guidance Note on Reporting under section 143(3)(f) and (h) of the Companies Act, 2013.